TEI Lite: Encoding for Interchange: an introduction to the TEI

Final revised edition for TEI P5

**Lou Burnard**

**C. M. Sperberg-McQueen**

August 2012

# Prefatory note

TEI Lite was the name adopted for what the TEI editors originally conceived of as a simple demonstration of how the TEI (Text Encoding Initiative) encoding scheme might be adopted to meet 90% of the needs of 90% of the TEI user community. In retrospect, it was predictable that many people should imagine TEI Lite to be all there is to TEI, or find TEI Lite to be far too heavy for their needs.

The original TEI Lite (1996) was based largely on observations of existing and previous practice in the encoding of texts, particularly as manifest in the collections of the [Oxford Text Archive](http://ota.ahds.ac.uk/) and other collections of the period. It is therefore unsurprising that it seems to have become, if not a de facto standard, at least a common point of departure for electronic text centres and encoding projects world wide. Maybe the fact that we actually produced this shortish, readable, manual for it also helped.

Early adopters of TEI Lite included a number of ‘Electronic Text Centers’ and digital library initiatives. It was also adopted as the basis for some early TEI-conformant authoring systems, and as the basis for introductory tutorials, many of them in languages other than English (see further the list of legacy versions at <http://www.tei-c.org/Vault/P4/Lite/>).

In 2002, following the publication of TEI P4, the XML version of the TEI Guidelines, which uses the generation of TEI Lite as an example of the TEI modification mechanism, the opportunity was taken to produce a lightly revised XML-conformant version. In 2006, a more substantially revised version based on TEI P5 was produced; this reflected the many changes between TEI P4 and TEI P5, but was not otherwise significantly different. In 2012, the TEI Technical Council, decided that a final revision should be undertaken to ensure that the documentation remained consistent with the latest (2.1) release of TEI P5. This version uses a recently added mechanism in the TEI customization architecture, which permits a customization to define only the TEI elements to be included in a schema, rather than the elements to be excluded from it. As such it is probably more resilient to change than earlier versions.

Lou Burnard, August 2012

This document provides an introduction to the recommendations of the Text Encoding Initiative (TEI), by describing a specific subset of the full TEI encoding scheme. The scheme documented here can be used to encode a wide variety of commonly encountered textual features, in such a way as to maximize the usability of electronic transcriptions and to facilitate their interchange among scholars using different computer systems. It is fully compatible with the full TEI scheme, as defined by TEI document P5, *Guidelines for Electronic Text Encoding and Interchange*, as of February 2006, and available from the TEI Consortium website at <http://www.tei-c.org/>.

# Introduction

The Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) Guidelines are addressed to anyone who wants to interchange information stored in an electronic form. They emphasize the interchange of textual information, but other forms of information such as images and sound are also addressed. The Guidelines are equally applicable in the creation of new resources and in the interchange of existing ones.

The Guidelines provide a means of making explicit certain features of a text in such a way as to aid the processing of that text by computer software running on different machines. This process of making explicit we call markup or encoding. Any textual representation on a computer uses some form of markup; the TEI came into being partly because of the enormous variety of mutually incomprehensible encoding schemes currently besetting scholarship, and partly because of the expanding range of scholarly uses now being identified for texts in electronic form.

The TEI Guidelines describe an encoding scheme which can be expressed using a number of different formal languages. The first editions of the Guidelines used the Standard Generalized Markup Language (SGML); since 2002, this has been replaced by the use of the Extensible Markup Language (XML). These markup languages have in common the definition of text in terms of elements and attributes, and rules governing their appearance within a text. The TEI's use of XML is ambitious in its complexity and generality, but it is fundamentally no different from that of any other XML markup scheme, and so any general-purpose XML-aware software is able to process TEI-conformant texts.

Since 2001, the TEI has been a community initiative supported by an international membership consortium. It was originally an international research project sponsored by the Association for Computers and the Humanities, the Association for Computational Linguistics, and the Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing, with substantial funding over its first five years from the U.S. National Endowment for the Humanities, Directorate General XIII of the Commission of the European Communities, the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation, the Social Science and Humanities Research Council of Canada and others. The Guidelines were first published in May 1994, after six years of development involving many hundreds of scholars from different academic disciplines worldwide. During the years that followed, the Guidelines became increasingly influential in the development of the digital library, in the language industries, and even in the development of the World Wide Web itself. The TEI Consortium was set up in January 2001, and a year later produced an edition of the Guidelines entirely revised for XML compatibility. In 2004, it set about a major revision of the Guidelines to take full advantage of new schema languages, the first release of which appeared in 2005. This revision of the TEI Lite document conforms to version 2.1 of this most recent edition of the Guidelines, TEI P5, released in June 2012.

At the outset of its work, the overall goals of the TEI were defined by the closing statement of a planning conference held at Vassar College, N.Y., in November, 1987; these ‘Poughkeepsie Principles’ were further elaborated in a series of design documents. The Guidelines, say these design documents, should:

* suffice to represent the textual features needed for research;
* be simple, clear, and concrete;
* be easy for researchers to use without special-purpose software;
* allow the rigorous definition and efficient processing of texts;
* provide for user-defined extensions;
* conform to existing and emergent standards.

The world of scholarship is large and diverse. For the Guidelines to have wide acceptability, it was important to ensure that:

1. the common core of textual features be easily shared;
2. additional specialist features be easy to add to (or remove from) a text;
3. multiple parallel encodings of the same feature should be possible;
4. the richness of markup should be user-defined, with a very small minimal requirement;
5. adequate documentation of the text and its encoding should be provided.

The present document describes a manageable selection from the extensive set of elements and recommendations resulting from those design goals, which is called *TEI Lite*.

In selecting from the several hundred elements defined by the full TEI scheme, we have tried to identify a useful ‘starter set’, comprising the elements which almost every user should know about. Experience working with TEI Lite will be invaluable in understanding the full TEI scheme and in knowing how to integrate specialized parts of it into the general TEI framework.

Our goals in defining this subset may be summarized as follows:

it should be able to handle adequately a reasonably wide variety of texts, at the level of detail found in existing practice (as demonstrated in, for example, the holdings of the Oxford Text Archive);

it should be useful for the production of new documents (such as this one) as well as the encoding of existing texts;

it should be usable with a wide range of existing XML software;

it should be a pure subset of the full TEI scheme and defined using the customizaticon methods described in the TEI Guidelines;

it should be as small and simple as is consistent with the other goals.

The reader may judge our success in meeting these goals for him or herself.

Although we have tried to make this document self-contained, as suits a tutorial text, the reader should be aware that it does not cover every detail of the TEI encoding scheme. All of the elements described here are fully documented in the TEI Guidelines themselves, which should be consulted for authoritative reference information on these, and on the many others which are not described here. Some basic knowledge of XML is assumed.

# A Short Example

We begin with a short example, intended to show what happens when a passage of prose is typed into a computer by someone with little sense of the purpose of mark-up, or the potential of electronic texts. In an ideal world, such output might be generated by a very accurate optical scanner. It attempts to be faithful to the appearance of the printed text, by retaining the original line breaks, by introducing blanks to represent the layout of the original headings and page breaks, and so forth. Where characters not available on the keyboard are needed (such as the accented letter a in faàl or the long dash), it attempts to mimic their appearance.

CHAPTER 38  
   
 READER, I married him. A quiet wedding we had: he and I, the par-  
 son and clerk, were alone present. When we got back from church, I  
 went into the kitchen of the manor-house, where Mary was cooking  
 the dinner, and John cleaning the knives, and I said --  
 'Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning.' The  
 housekeeper and her husband were of that decent, phlegmatic  
 order of people, to whom one may at any time safely communicate a  
 remarkable piece of news without incurring the danger of having  
 one's ears pierced by some shrill ejaculation and subsequently stunned  
 by a torrent of wordy wonderment. Mary did look up, and she did  
 stare at me; the ladle with which she was basting a pair of chickens  
 roasting at the fire, did for some three minutes hang suspended in air,  
 and for the same space of time John's knives also had rest from the  
 polishing process; but Mary, bending again over the roast, said only --  
 'Have you, miss? Well, for sure!'  
 A short time after she pursued, 'I seed you go out with the master,  
 but I didn't know you were gone to church to be wed'; and she  
 basted away. John, when I turned to him, was grinning from ear to  
 ear.  
 'I telled Mary how it would be,' he said: 'I knew what Mr Ed-  
 ward' (John was an old servant, and had known his master when he  
 was the cadet of the house, therefore he often gave him his Christian  
 name) -- 'I knew what Mr Edward would do; and I was certain he  
 would not wait long either: and he's done right, for aught I know. I  
 wish you joy, miss!' and he politely pulled his forelock.  
 'Thank you, John. Mr Rochester told me to give you and Mary  
 this.'  
 I put into his hand a five-pound note. Without waiting to hear  
 more, I left the kitchen. In passing the door of that sanctum some time  
 after, I caught the words --  
 'She'll happen do better for him nor ony o' t' grand ladies.' And  
 again, 'If she ben't one o' th' handsomest, she's noan faa\l, and varry  
 good-natured; and i' his een she's fair beautiful, onybody may see  
 that.'  
 I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what  
 I had done: fully explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and  
   
 474  
   
 JANE EYRE 475  
   
 Mary approved the step unreservedly. Diana announced that she  
 would just give me time to get over the honeymoon, and then she  
 would come and see me.  
 'She had better not wait till then, Jane,' said Mr Rochester, when I  
 read her letter to him; 'if she does, she will be too late, for our honey-  
 moon will shine our life long: its beams will only fade over your  
 grave or mine.'  
 How St John received the news I don't know: he never answered  
 the letter in which I communicated it: yet six months after he wrote  
 to me, without, however, mentioning Mr Rochester's name or allud-  
 ing to my marriage. His letter was then calm, and though very serious,  
 kind. He has maintained a regular, though not very frequent correspond-  
 ence ever since: he hopes I am happy, and trusts I am not of those who  
 live without God in the world, and only mind earthly things.

This transcription suffers from a number of shortcomings:

* the page numbers and running titles are intermingled with the text in a way which makes it difficult for software to disentangle them;
* no distinction is made between single quotation marks and apostrophe, so it is difficult to know exactly which passages are in direct speech;
* the preservation of the copy text's hyphenation means that simple-minded search programs will not find the broken words;
* the accented letter in faàl and the long dash have been rendered by ad hoc keying conventions which follow no standard pattern and will be processed correctly only if the transcriber remembers to mention them in the documentation;
* paragraph divisions are marked only by the use of white space, and hard carriage returns have been introduced at the end of each line. Consequently, if the size of type used to print the text changes, reformatting will be problematic.

We now present the same passage, as it might be encoded using the TEI Guidelines. As we shall see, there are many ways in which this encoding could be extended, but as a minimum, the TEI approach allows us to represent the following distinctions:

* Paragraph and chapter divisions are now marked explicitly.
* Apostrophes are distinguished from quotation marks; direct speech is explicitly marked.
* The accented letter and the long dash are correctly represented.
* Page divisions have been marked with an empty <pb> element alone.
* The lineation of the original has not been retained and words broken by typographic accident at the end of a line have been re-assembled without comment.
* For convenience of proof reading, a new line has been introduced at the start of each paragraph, but the indentation is removed.

<**pb** **n**="474"/>  
<**div** **n**="38" **type**="chapter">  
 <**p**>Reader, I married him. A quiet wedding we had: he and I, the parson and clerk, were alone  
   present. When we got back from church, I went into the kitchen of the manor-house, where  
   Mary was cooking the dinner, and John cleaning the knives, and I said —</**p**>  
 <**p**>  
  <**q**>Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning.</**q**> The housekeeper and her  
   husband were of that decent, phlegmatic order of people, to whom one may at any time safely  
   communicate a remarkable piece of news without incurring the danger of having one's ears  
   pierced by some shrill ejaculation and subsequently stunned by a torrent of wordy  
   wonderment. Mary did look up, and she did stare at me; the ladle with which she was basting  
   a pair of chickens roasting at the fire, did for some three minutes hang suspended in air,  
   and for the same space of time John's knives also had rest from the polishing process; but  
   Mary, bending again over the roast, said only —</**p**>  
 <**p**>  
  <**q**>Have you, miss? Well, for sure!</**q**>  
 </**p**>  
 <**p**>A short time after she pursued, <**q**>I seed you go out with the master, but I didn't know  
     you were gone to church to be wed</**q**>; and she basted away. John, when I turned to him, was  
   grinning from ear to ear. <**q**>I telled Mary how it would be,</**q**> he said: <**q**>I knew what Mr  
     Edward</**q**> (John was an old servant, and had known his master when he was the cadet of the  
   house, therefore he often gave him his Christian name) — <**q**>I knew what Mr Edward would do;  
     and I was certain he would not wait long either: and he's done right, for aught I know. I  
     wish you joy, miss!</**q**> and he politely pulled his forelock.</**p**>  
 <**p**>  
  <**q**>Thank you, John. Mr Rochester told me to give you and Mary this.</**q**>  
 </**p**>  
 <**p**>I put into his hand a five-pound note. Without waiting to hear more, I left the kitchen.  
   In passing the door of that sanctum some time after, I caught the words —</**p**>  
 <**p**>  
  <**q**>She'll happen do better for him nor ony o' t' grand ladies.</**q**> And again, <**q**>If she  
     ben't one o' th' handsomest, she's noan faàl, and varry good-natured; and i' his een she's  
     fair beautiful, onybody may see that.</**q**>  
 </**p**>  
 <**p**>I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done: fully  
   explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and <**pb** **n**="475"/> Mary approved the step  
   unreservedly. Diana announced that she would just give me time to get over the honeymoon,  
   and then she would come and see me.</**p**>  
 <**p**>  
  <**q**>She had better not wait till then, Jane,</**q**> said Mr Rochester, when I read her letter  
   to him; <**q**>if she does, she will be too late, for our honeymoon will shine our life long:  
     its beams will only fade over your grave or mine.</**q**>  
 </**p**>  
 <**p**>How St John received the news I don't know: he never answered the letter in which I  
   communicated it: yet six months after he wrote to me, without, however, mentioning Mr  
   Rochester's name or alluding to my marriage. His letter was then calm, and though very  
   serious, kind. He has maintained a regular, though not very frequent correspondence ever  
   since: he hopes I am happy, and trusts I am not of those who live without God in the world,  
   and only mind earthly things.</**p**>  
</**div**>

This particular encoding represents a set of choices or priorities. As a trivial example, note that in the second example, end-of-line hyphenation has been silently removed. Conceivably Brontë (or her printer) intended the word ‘honeymoon’ to appear as ‘honey-moon’ on its second appearance, though this seems unlikely: our decision to focus on Brontë's text, rather than on the printing of it in this particular edition, makes it impossible to be certain. This is an instance of the fundamental *selectivity* of any encoding. An encoding makes explicit only those textual features of importance to the encoder. It is not difficult to think of ways in which the encoding of even this short passage might readily be extended. For example:

a regularized form of the passages in dialect could be provided;

footnotes glossing or commenting on any passage could be added;

pointers linking parts of this text to others could be added;

proper names of various kinds could be distinguished from the surrounding text;

detailed bibliographic information about the text's provenance and context could be prefixed to it;

a linguistic analysis of the passage into sentences, clauses, words, etc., could be provided, each unit being associated with appropriate category codes;

the text could be segmented into narrative or discourse units;

systematic analysis or interpretation of the text could be included in the encoding, with potentially complex alignment or linkage between the text and the analysis, or between the text and one or more translations of it;

passages in the text could be linked to images or sound held on other media.

TEI-recommended ways of carrying out most of these are described in the remainder of this document. The TEI scheme as a whole also provides for an enormous range of other possibilities, of which we cite only a few:

detailed analysis of the components of names;

detailed meta-information providing thesaurus-style information about the text's origins or topics;

information about the printing history or manuscript variations exhibited by a particular series of versions of the text.

For recommendations on these and many other possibilities, the full Guidelines should be consulted.

# The Structure of a TEI Text

All TEI-conformant texts contain (a) a TEI header (marked up as a <teiHeader> element) and (b) the transcription of the text proper (marked up as a <text> element). These two elements are combined together to form a single <TEI> element, which must be declared within the TEI namespace[[1]](#footnote-2).

The TEI header provides information analogous to that provided by the title page of a printed text. It has up to four parts: a bibliographic description of the machine-readable text, a description of the way it has been encoded, a non-bibliographic description of the text (a text profile), and a revision history. The header is described in more detail in section 19.

A TEI text may be unitary (a single work) or composite (a collection of single works, such as an anthology). In either case, the text may have an optional front or back. In between is the body of the text, which, in the case of a composite text, may consist of groups, each containing more groups or texts.

A unitary text will be encoded using an overall structure like this:

<**TEI** xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <**teiHeader**>  
<!-- [ TEI Header information ] -->  
 </**teiHeader**>  
 <**text**>  
  <**front**>  
<!-- [ front matter ... ] -->  
  </**front**>  
  <**body**>  
<!-- [ body of text ... ] -->  
  </**body**>  
  <**back**>  
<!-- [ back matter ... ] -->  
  </**back**>  
 </**text**>  
</**TEI**>

A composite text also has an optional front and back. In between occur one or more groups of texts, each with its own optional front and back matter. A composite text will thus be encoded using an overall structure like this:

<**TEI** xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <**teiHeader**>  
<!--[ header information for the composite ]-->  
 </**teiHeader**>  
 <**text**>  
  <**front**>  
<!--[ front matter for the composite ]-->  
  </**front**>  
  <**group**>  
   <**text**>  
    <**front**>  
<!--[ front matter of first text ]-->  
    </**front**>  
    <**body**>  
<!--[ body of first text ]-->  
    </**body**>  
    <**back**>  
<!--[ back matter of first text ]-->  
    </**back**>  
   </**text**>  
   <**text**>  
    <**front**>  
<!--[ front matter of second text]-->  
    </**front**>  
    <**body**>  
<!--[ body of second text ]-->  
    </**body**>  
    <**back**>  
<!--[ back matter of second text ]-->  
    </**back**>  
   </**text**>  
<!--[ more texts or groups of texts here ]-->  
  </**group**>  
  <**back**>  
<!--[ back matter for the composite ]-->  
  </**back**>  
 </**text**>  
</**TEI**>

It is also possible to define a composite of complete TEI texts, each with its own header. Such a collection is known as a TEI corpus, and may itself have a header:

<**teiCorpus** xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
 <**teiHeader**>  
<!--[header information for the corpus]-->  
 </**teiHeader**>  
 <**TEI**>  
  <**teiHeader**>  
<!--[header information for first text]-->  
  </**teiHeader**>  
  <**text**>  
<!--[first text in corpus]-->  
  </**text**>  
 </**TEI**>  
 <**TEI**>  
  <**teiHeader**>  
<!--[header information for second text]-->  
  </**teiHeader**>  
  <**text**>  
<!--[second text in corpus]-->  
  </**text**>  
 </**TEI**>  
</**teiCorpus**>

It is also possible to create a composite of corpora -- that is, one <teiCorpus> element may contain many nested <teiCorpus> elements rather than many nested <TEI> elements, to any depth considered necessary.

In the remainder of this document, we discuss chiefly simple text structures. The discussion in each case consists of a short list of relevant TEI elements with a brief definition of each, followed by definitions for any attributes specific to that element, and a reference to any classes of which the element is a member. These references are linked to full specifications for each object, as given in the TEI *Guidelines*. In most cases, short examples are also given.

For example, here are the elements discussed so far:

**TEI** (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the model.resource class. Multiple <TEI> elements may be combined within a <TEI> (or <teiCorpus>) element.

**teiHeader** (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources.

**text** contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample.

**teiCorpus** contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more <TEI> elements, each containing a single text header and a text.

# Encoding the Body

As indicated above, a simple TEI document at the textual level consists of the following elements:

**front** (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, abstracts, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body.

**group** contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc.

**body** (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter.

**back** (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.

Elements specific to front and back matter are described below in section 18. In this section we discuss the elements making up the body of a text.

## Text Division Elements

The body of a prose text may be just a series of paragraphs, or these paragraphs may be grouped together into chapters, sections, subsections, etc. Each paragraph is tagged using the <p> tag. The <div> element is used to represent any such grouping of paragraphs.

**p** (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose.

**div** (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

The *@type* attribute on the <div> element may be used to supply a conventional name for this category of text division, or otherwise distinguish them. Typical values might be ‘book’, ‘chapter’, ‘section’, ‘part’, ‘poem’, ‘song’, etc. For a given project, it will usually be advisable to define and adhere to a specific list of such values.

A <div> element may itself contain further, nested, <div>s, thus mimicking the traditional structure of a book, which can be decomposed hierarchically into units such as parts, containing chapters, containing sections, and so on. TEI texts in general conform to this simple hierarchic model.

The *@xml:id* attribute may be used to supply a unique identifier for the division, which may be used for cross references or other links to it, such as a commentary, as further discussed in section 8. It is often useful to provide an *@xml:id* attribute for every major structural unit in a text, and to derive its values in some systematic way, for example by appending a section number to a short code for the title of the work in question, as in the examples below. It is particularly useful to supply such identifiers if the resource concerned is to be made available over the web, since they make it much easier for other web-based applications to link directly to the corresponding parts of your text.

The *@n* attribute may be used to supply (additionally or alternatively) a short mnemonic name or number for a division, or any other element. If a conventional form of reference or abbreviation for the parts of a work already exists (such as the book/chapter/verse pattern of Biblical citations), the *@n* attribute is the place to record it; unlike the identifier supplied by *@xml:id*, it does not need to be unique.

The *@xml:lang* attribute may be used to specify the language of the division. Languages are identified by an internationally defined code, as further discussed in section 6.3 below.

The *@rend* attribute may be used to supply information about the rendition (appearance) of a division, or any other element, as further discussed in section 6 below. As with the *@type* attribute, a project will often find it useful to predefine the possible values for this attribute, but TEI Lite does not constrain it in anyway.

These four attributes, *@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, and *@rend* are so widely useful that they are allowed on any element in any TEI schema: they are global attributes. Other global attributes defined in the TEI Lite scheme are discussed in section 8.3.

The value of every *@xml:id* attribute should be unique within a document. One simple way of ensuring that this is so is to make it reflect the hierarchic structure of the document. For example, Smith's *Wealth of Nations* as first published consists of five books, each of which is divided into chapters, while some chapters are further subdivided into parts. We might define *@xml:id* values for this structure as follows:

<**body**>  
 <**div** **n**="I" **type**="book" **xml:id**="WN1">  
  <**div** **n**="I.1" **type**="chapter" **xml:id**="WN101">  
<!-- ... -->  
  </**div**>  
  <**div** **n**="I.2" **type**="chapter" **xml:id**="WN102">  
<!-- ... -->  
  </**div**>  
<!-- ... -->  
  <**div** **n**="I.10" **type**="chapter"  
   **xml:id**="WN110">  
   <**div** **n**="I.10.1" **type**="part"  
    **xml:id**="WN1101">  
<!-- ... -->  
   </**div**>  
   <**div** **n**="I.10.2" **type**="part"  
    **xml:id**="WN1102">  
<!-- ... -->  
   </**div**>  
  </**div**>  
<!-- ... -->  
 </**div**>  
 <**div** **n**="II" **type**="book" **xml:id**="WN2">  
<!-- ... -->  
 </**div**>  
</**body**>

A different numbering scheme may be used for *@xml:id* and *@n* attributes: this is often useful where a canonical reference scheme is used which does not tally with the structure of the work. For example, in a novel divided into books each containing chapters, where the chapters are numbered sequentially through the whole work, rather than within each book, one might use a scheme such as the following:

<**body**>  
 <**div** **n**="1" **type**="volume" **xml:id**="TS01">  
  <**div** **n**="1" **type**="chapter" **xml:id**="TS011">  
<!-- ... -->  
  </**div**>  
  <**div** **n**="2" **type**="chapter" **xml:id**="TS012">  
<!-- ... -->  
  </**div**>  
 </**div**>  
 <**div** **n**="2" **type**="volume" **xml:id**="TS02">  
  <**div** **n**="3" **type**="chapter" **xml:id**="TS021">  
<!-- ... -->  
  </**div**>  
  <**div** **n**="4" **type**="chapter" **xml:id**="TS022">  
<!-- ... -->  
  </**div**>  
 </**div**>  
</**body**>

Here the work has two volumes, each containing two chapters. The chapters are numbered conventionally 1 to 4, but the *@xml:id* values specified allow them to be regarded additionally as if they were numbered 1.1, 1.2, 2.1, 2.2.

## Headings and Closings

Every <div> may have a title or heading at its start, and (less commonly) a trailer such as ‘End of Chapter 1’ at its end. The following elements may be used to transcribe them:

**head** (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc.

**trailer** contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.

Some other elements which may be necessary at the beginning or ending of text divisions are discussed below in section 18.1.2.

Whether or not headings and trailers are included in a transcription is a matter for the individual transcriber to decide. Where a heading is completely regular (for example ‘Chapter 1’) or may be automatically constructed from attribute values (e.g. <div type="chapter" n="1">), it may be omitted; where it contains otherwise unrecoverable text it should always be included. For example, the start of Hardy's *Under the Greenwood Tree* might be encoded as follows:

<**div** **n**="Winter" **type**="Part" **xml:id**="UGT1">  
 <**div** **n**="1" **type**="Chapter" **xml:id**="UGT11">  
  <**head**>Mellstock-Lane</**head**>  
  <**p**>To dwellers in a wood almost every species of tree ... </**p**>  
 </**div**>  
</**div**>

## Prose, Verse and Drama

As in the Bronte example above, the paragraphs making up a textual division are tagged with the <p> tag. In poetic or dramatic texts different tags are needed, to represent verse lines and stanzas in the first case, or individual speeches and stage directions in the second. :

**l** (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse.

**lg** (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc.

**sp** (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text.

**speaker** contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment.

**stage** (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment.

Here, for example, is the start of a poetic text in which verse lines and stanzas are tagged:

<**lg** **n**="I">  
 <**l**>I Sing the progresse of a  
   deathlesse soule,</**l**>  
 <**l**>Whom Fate, with God made, but doth not controule,</**l**>  
 <**l**>Plac'd in  
   most shapes; all times before the law</**l**>  
 <**l**>Yoak'd us, and when, and since, in this I  
   sing.</**l**>  
 <**l**>And the great world to his aged evening;</**l**>  
 <**l**>From infant morne, through manly  
   noone I draw.</**l**>  
 <**l**>What the gold Chaldee, of silver Persian saw,</**l**>  
 <**l**>Greeke brass, or  
   Roman iron, is in this one;</**l**>  
 <**l**>A worke t'out weare Seths pillars, bricke and  
   stone,</**l**>  
 <**l**>And (holy writs excepted) made to yeeld to none,</**l**>  
</**lg**>

Note that the <l> element marks verse lines, not typographic lines: the original lineation of the first few lines above has not therefore been made explicit by this encoding, and may be lost. The <lb> element described in section 5 might additionally be used to mark typographic lines if so desired.

Here is the end of a famous dramatic text, in which speeches and stage directions are marked:

<**sp**>  
 <**speaker**>Vladimir</**speaker**>  
 <**p**>Pull on your trousers.</**p**>  
</**sp**>  
<**sp**>  
 <**speaker**>Estragon</**speaker**>  
 <**p**>You want me to pull off my trousers?</**p**>  
</**sp**>  
<**sp**>  
 <**speaker**>Vladimir</**speaker**>  
 <**p**>Pull <**emph**>on</**emph**> your trousers.</**p**>  
</**sp**>  
<**sp**>  
 <**speaker**>Vladimir</**speaker**>  
 <**p**>  
  <**stage**>(realizing his trousers are down)</**stage**>.  
   True</**p**>  
</**sp**>  
<**stage**>He pulls up his trousers</**stage**>  
<**sp**>  
 <**speaker**>Vladimir</**speaker**>  
 <**p**>Well? Shall we go?</**p**>  
</**sp**>  
<**sp**>  
 <**speaker**>Estragon</**speaker**>  
 <**p**>Yes, let's go.</**p**>  
</**sp**>  
<**stage**>They do not move.</**stage**>

Note that the <stage> (stage direction) element can appear either within a speech or between speeches. The <sp> ("speech") element contains, following an optional <speaker> element indicating who is speaking, either paragraphs (if the speech is in prose) or verse lines or stanzas as in the next example. In this case, it is quite common to find that verse lines are split between speakers. The easiest way of encoding this is to use the *@part* attribute to indicate that the lines so fragmented are incomplete :

<**div** **n**="I" **type**="Act">  
 <**head**>ACT I</**head**>  
 <**div** **n**="1" **type**="Scene">  
  <**head**>SCENE I</**head**>  
  <**stage** **rend**="italic"> Enter Barnardo and Francisco, two Sentinels, at several doors</**stage**>  
  <**sp**>  
   <**speaker**>Barn</**speaker**>  
   <**l** **part**="Y">Who's there?</**l**>  
  </**sp**>  
  <**sp**>  
   <**speaker**>Fran</**speaker**>  
   <**l**>Nay, answer me. Stand and unfold yourself.</**l**>  
  </**sp**>  
  <**sp**>  
   <**speaker**>Barn</**speaker**>  
   <**l** **part**="I">Long live the King!</**l**>  
  </**sp**>  
  <**sp**>  
   <**speaker**>Fran</**speaker**>  
   <**l** **part**="M">Barnardo?</**l**>  
  </**sp**>  
  <**sp**>  
   <**speaker**>Barn</**speaker**>  
   <**l** **part**="F">He.</**l**>  
  </**sp**>  
  <**sp**>  
   <**speaker**>Fran</**speaker**>  
   <**l**>You come most carefully upon your hour.</**l**>  
  </**sp**>  
<!-- ... -->  
 </**div**>  
</**div**>

The same mechanism may be applied to stanzas which are divided between two speakers:

<**div**>  
 <**sp**>  
  <**speaker**>First voice</**speaker**>  
  <**lg** **part**="I" **type**="stanza">  
   <**l**>But why drives on that ship so fast</**l**>  
   <**l**>Withouten wave or wind?</**l**>  
  </**lg**>  
 </**sp**>  
 <**sp**>  
  <**speaker**>Second Voice</**speaker**>  
  <**lg** **part**="F">  
   <**l**>The air is cut away before.</**l**>  
   <**l**>And closes from behind.</**l**>  
  </**lg**>  
 </**sp**>  
<!-- ... -->  
</**div**>

The <sp> element can also be used for dialogue presented in a prose work as if it were drama, as in the next example, which also demonstrates the use of the *@who* attribute to bear a code identifying the speaker of the piece of dialogue concerned:

<**div**>  
 <**sp** **who**="#OPI">  
  <**speaker**>The reverend Doctor Opimian</**speaker**>  
  <**p**>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</**p**>  
 </**sp**>  
 <**sp** **who**="#GRM">  
  <**speaker**>Mr Gryll</**speaker**>  
  <**p**>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</**p**>  
 </**sp**>  
 <**sp** **who**="#OPI">  
  <**speaker**>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</**speaker**>  
  <**p**>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the first  
     place....</**p**>  
  <**p**>Fish, Miss Gryll -- I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but for the present I  
     will forbear.</**p**>  
 </**sp**>  
</**div**>

Here the *@who* attribute values (#OPI etc.) are links, pointing to a list of the characters in the novel, each of which has an identifier:

<**list**>  
 <**head**>Characters in the novel</**head**>  
 <**item** **xml:id**="OPI">  
  <**name**>Dr Opimian</**name**> : named for the famous Roman fine wine</**item**>  
 <**item** **xml:id**="GRM">  
  <**name**>Mr Gryll</**name**> : named for the mythical Gryllus, one of Ulysses'  
   sailors transformed by Circe into a pig, who argues that he was happier in that state than  
   as a man</**item**>  
</**list**>

# Page and Line Numbers

Page and line breaks etc. may be marked with the following elements.

**pb** (page beginning) marks the beginning of a new page in a paginated document.

**lb** (line beginning) marks the beginning of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text.

**milestone** marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element.

These elements mark a single point in the text, not a span of text. The global *@n* attribute should be used to supply the number of the page or line beginning at the tag.

When working from a paginated original, it is often useful to record its pagination, if only to simplify later proof-reading. It is also useful for synchronizing an encoded text with a set of page images. Recording the line breaks may be useful for similar reasons.

If features such as pagination or lineation are marked for more than one edition, specify the edition in question using the *@ed* attribute, and supply as many tags are necessary. For example, in the following passage we indicate where the page breaks occur in two different editions (ED1 and ED2)

<**p**>I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done: fully  
 explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and <**pb** **ed**="ED1" **n**="475"/> Mary approved the step  
 unreservedly. Diana announced that she would <**pb** **ed**="ED2" **n**="485"/>just give me time to get  
 over the honeymoon, and then she would come and see me.</**p**>

A special attribute *@break* may be used to indicate whether or not this empty element is considered as a word-breaking, irrespective of any adjacent whitespace. For example, in the following encoded sample:

The <pb> and <lb> elements are special cases of the general class of milestone elements which mark reference points within a text. The generic <milestone> element can mark any kind of reference point: for example, a column break, the start of a new kind of section not otherwise tagged, or in general any significant change in the text not marked by an XML element. The names used for types of unit and for editions referred to by the *@ed* and *@unit* attributes may be chosen freely, but should be documented in the header <refsDecl> element (see 19.2.3). The <milestone> element may be used to replace the others, or the others may be used as a set; they should not be mixed arbitrarily.

# Marking Highlighted Phrases

## Changes of Typeface, etc.

Highlighted words or phrases are those made visibly different from the rest of the text, typically by a change of type font, handwriting style, ink colour etc., which is intended to draw the reader's attention to some associated change.

The global *@rend* attribute can be attached to any element, and used wherever necessary to specify details of the highlighting used for it in the source. For example, a heading rendered in bold might be tagged <head rend="bold">, and one in italic <head rend="italic">.

The values to be used for the *@rend* attribute are not specified by the TEI Guidelines, since they will depend entirely on the needs of the particular project. Some typical values might include italic, bold etc. for font variations; center, right etc. for alignment; large, small etc. for size; smallcaps, allcaps etc. for type variants and so on. Several such words may be used in combination as necessary, but no formal syntax is proposed. The full TEI Guidelines provide more rigorous mechanisms, using other W3C standards such as CSS, as an alternative to the use of *@rend*.

It is not always possible or desirable to interpret the reasons for such changes of rendering in a text. In such cases, the element <hi> may be used to mark a sequence of highlighted text without making any claim as to its status.

**hi** (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made.

In the following example, the use of a distinct typeface for the subheading and for the included name are recorded but not interpreted:

<**p**>  
 <**hi** **rend**="gothic">And this Indenture further  
   witnesseth</**hi**> that the said <**hi** **rend**="italic">Walter Shandy</**hi**>, merchant, in  
 consideration of the said intended marriage ...  
</**p**>

Alternatively, where the cause for the highlighting can be identified with confidence, a number of other, more specific, elements are available.

**emph** (emphasized) marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect.

**foreign** identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text.

**gloss** identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase.

**label** contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary.

**mentioned** marks words or phrases mentioned, not used.

**term** contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term.

**title** contains a title for any kind of work.

Some features (notably quotations and glosses) may be found in a text either marked by highlighting, or with quotation marks. In either case, the elements <q> and <gloss> (as discussed in the following section) should be used. If the highlighting is to be recorded, use the global *@rend* attribute.

As an example of the elements defined here, consider the following sentence:

On the one hand the *Nibelungenlied* is associated with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century France, the *romans d'antiquité*, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes, and the German adaptations of these works by Heinrich van Veldeke, Hartmann von Aue, and Wolfram von Eschenbach.

Interpreting the role of the highlighting, the sentence might look like this:

<**p**>On the one hand the <**title**>Nibelungenlied</**title**>  
 is associated with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century France, the <**foreign**>romans  
   d'antiquité</**foreign**>, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes, ...</**p**>

Describing only the appearance of the original, it might look like this:

<**p**>On the one hand the <**hi** **rend**="italic">Nibelungenlied</**hi**> is associated with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century France,  
 the <**hi** **rend**="italic">romans d'antiquité</**hi**>, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes,  
 ...</**p**>

## Quotations and Related Features

Like changes of typeface, quotation marks are conventionally used to denote several different features within a text, of which the most frequent is quotation. When possible, we recommend that the underlying feature be tagged, rather than the simple fact that quotation marks appear in the text, using the following elements:

**q** (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used.

**mentioned** marks words or phrases mentioned, not used.

**soCalled** contains a word or phrase for which the author or narrator indicates a disclaiming of responsibility, for example by the use of scare quotes or italics.

**gloss** identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase.

Here is a simple example of a quotation:

<**p**>Few dictionary makers are likely to forget Dr. Johnson's description of the  
 lexicographer as <**q**>a harmless drudge.</**q**>  
</**p**>

To record how a quotation was printed (for example, in-line or set off as a display or block quotation), the *@rend* attribute should be used. This may also be used to indicate the kind of quotation marks used.

Direct speech interrupted by a narrator can be represented simply by ending the quotation and beginning it again after the interruption, as in the following example:

<**p**>  
 <**q**>Who-e debel you?</**q**> — he at last said —  
<**q**>you no speak-e, damme, I kill-e.</**q**> And so saying, the lighted tomahawk began  
 flourishing about me in the dark.  
</**p**>

If it is important to convey the idea that the two <q> elements together make up a single speech, the linking attributes *@next* and *@prev* may be used, as described in section 8.3.

Quotations may be accompanied by a reference to the source or speaker, using the *@who* attribute, whether or not this is explicit in the text, as in the following example:

<**q** **who**="#Wilson">Spaulding, he came  
 down into the office just this day eight weeks with this very paper in his hand, and he  
 says:—<**q** **who**="#Spaulding">I wish to the Lord, Mr. Wilson, that I was a red-headed  
   man.</**q**>  
</**q**>

This example also demonstrates how quotations may be embedded within other quotations: one speaker (Wilson) quotes another speaker (Spaulding).

The creator of the electronic text must decide whether quotation marks are replaced by the tags or whether the tags are added and the quotation marks kept. If the quotation marks are removed from the text, the *@rend* attribute may be used to record the way in which they were rendered in the copy text.

The full TEI Guidelines provide additional elements to distinguish direct speech, quotation, and other typical uses of quotation mark although it is not always possible and may not be considered desirable to interpret the function of quotation marks in a text. For simplicity, only <q> (which may be used for any such case) has been included in TEI Lite.

## Foreign Words or Expressions

Words or phrases which are not in the main language of the texts may be tagged as such in one of two ways. If the word or phrase is already tagged for some reason, the element indicated should bear a value for the global *@xml:lang* attribute indicating the language used. Where there is no applicable element, the element <foreign> may be used, again using the *@xml:lang* attribute. For example:

<**p**>John has real <**foreign** **xml:lang**="fr">savoir-faire</**foreign**>.</**p**>  
<**p**>Have you read <**title** **xml:lang**="de">Die  
   Dreigroschenoper</**title**>?</**p**>  
<**p**>  
 <**mentioned** **xml:lang**="fr">Savoir-faire</**mentioned**> is French  
 for know-how.  
</**p**>  
<**p**>The court issued a writ of <**term** **xml:lang**="la">mandamus</**term**>.</**p**>

As these examples show, the <foreign> element should not be used to tag foreign words if some other more specific element such as <title>, <mentioned>, or <term> applies. The global *@xml:lang* attribute may be attached to any element to show that it uses some other language than that of the surrounding text.

The codes used to identify languages, supplied on the *@xml:lang* attribute, must be constructed in a particular way, and must conform to common Internet standards[[2]](#footnote-3), as further explained in the relevant section of the TEI Guidelines. Some simple example codes for a few languages are given here:

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| zh | Chinese | grc | Ancient Greek |
| en | English | el | Greek |
| enm | Middle English | ja | Japanese |
| fr | French | la | Latin |
| de | German | sa | Sanskrit |

# Notes

All notes, whether printed as footnotes, endnotes, marginalia, or elsewhere, should be marked using the same element:

**note** contains a note or annotation.

Where possible, the body of a note should be inserted in the text at the point at which its identifier or mark first appears. This may not be possible for example with marginalia, which may not be anchored to an exact location. For simplicity, it may be adequate to position marginal notes before the relevant paragraph or other element. Notes may also be placed in a separate division of the text (as end-notes are, in printed books) and linked to the relevant portion of the text using their *@target* attribute.

The *@n* attribute may be used to supply the number or identifier of a note if this is required. The *@resp* attribute should be used consistently to distinguish between authorial and editorial notes, if the work has both kinds.

Examples:

<**p**>Collections are ensembles of  
 distinct entities or objects of any sort. <**note** **n**="1" **place**="foot"> We explain below why we  
   use the uncommon term <**mentioned**>collection</**mentioned**> instead of the expected  
 <**mentioned**>set</**mentioned**>. Our usage corresponds to the <**mentioned**>aggregate</**mentioned**>  
   of many mathematical writings and to the sense of <**mentioned**>class</**mentioned**> found in  
   older logical writings. </**note**> The elements ...</**p**>

<**lg** **xml:id**="RAM609">  
 <**note** **place**="margin">The  
   curse is finally expiated</**note**>  
 <**l**>And now this spell was snapt: once more</**l**>  
 <**l**>I viewed  
   the ocean green,</**l**>  
 <**l**>And looked far forth, yet little saw</**l**>  
 <**l**>Of what had else been seen  
   —</**l**>  
</**lg**>

# Cross References and Links

Explicit cross references or links from one point in a text to another in the same or another document may be encoded using the elements described in this section. Implicit links (such as the association between two parallel texts, or that between a text and its interpretation) may be encoded using the linking attributes discussed in section 8.3.

## Simple Cross References

A cross reference from one point within a single document to another can be encoded using either of the following elements:

**ref** (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment.

**ptr** (pointer) defines a pointer to another location.

The difference between these two elements is that <ptr> is an empty element, simply marking a point from which a link is to be made, whereas <ref> may contain some text as well, typically identifying the target of the cross reference. The <ptr> element would be used for a cross reference which is to be indicated by some non-verbal means such as a symbol or icon, or in an electronic text by a button. It is also useful in document production systems, where the formatter can generate the correct verbal form of the cross reference.

The following two forms, for example, are logically equivalent :

See especially <**ref** **target**="#SEC12">section 12 on  
 page 34</**ref**>.

See especially <**ptr** **target**="#SEC12"/>.

The value of the *@target* attribute on either element may be the identifier of some other element within the current document. The passage or phrase being pointed at must bear an identifier, and must therefore be tagged as an element of some kind. In the following example, the cross reference is to a <div> element:

... see especially <**ptr** **target**="#SEC12"/>. ...   
<**div** **xml:id**="SEC12">  
 <**head**>Concerning Identifiers</**head**>  
<!-- ... -->  
</**div**>

Because the *@xml:id* attribute is global, any element in a TEI document may be pointed to in this way. In the following example, a paragraph has been given an identifier so that it may be pointed at:

... this is  
 discussed in <**ref** **target**="#pspec">the paragraph on links</**ref**> ...   
<**p** **xml:id**="pspec">Links  
 may be made to any kind of element ...</**p**>

Sometimes the target of a cross reference does not correspond with any particular feature of a text, and so may not be tagged as an element of some kind. If the desired target is simply a point in the current document, the easiest way to mark it is by introducing an <anchor> element at the appropriate spot. If the target is some sequence of words not otherwise tagged, the <seg> element may be introduced to mark them. These two elements are described as follows:

**anchor** (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element.

**seg** (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the ‘chunk’ level.

In the following (imaginary) example, <ref> elements have been used to represent points in this text which are to be linked in some way to other parts of it; in the first case to a point, and in the second, to a sequence of words:

Returning to <**ref** **target**="#ABCD">the point where I  
 dozed off</**ref**>, I noticed that <**ref** **target**="#EFGH">three words</**ref**> had been circled in  
 red by a previous reader

This encoding requires that elements with the specified identifiers (ABCD and EFGH in this example) are to be found somewhere else in the current document. Assuming that no element already exists to carry these identifiers, the <anchor> and <seg> elements may be used:

....  
<**anchor** **type**="bookmark" **xml:id**="ABCD"/> .... ....<**seg** **type**="target" **xml:id**="EFGH"> ...  
</**seg**> ...

The *@type* attribute should be used (as above) to distinguish amongst different purposes for which these general purpose elements might be used in a text. Some other uses are discussed in section 8.3 below.

## Pointing to other documents

So far, we have shown how the elements <ptr> and <ref> may be used for cross-references or links whose targets occur within the same document as their source. However, the same elements may also be used to refer to elements in any other XML document or resource, such as a document on the web, or a database component. This is possible because the value of the *@target* attribute may be any valid universal resource indicator (URI) [Note: A full definition of this term, defined by the W3C (the consortium which manages the development and maintenance of the World Wide Web), is beyond the scope of this tutorial: however, the most frequently encountered version of a URI is the familiar ‘URL’ used to indicate a web page, such as http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml] .

A URI may reference a web page or just a part of one, for example http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml#SEC2. The sharp sign indicates that what follows it is the identifier of an element to be located within the XML document identified by what precedes it: this example will therefore locate an element which has an *@xml:id* attribute value of SEC2 within the document retrieved from http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml. In the examples we have discussed so far, the part to the left of the sharp sign has been omitted: this is understood to mean that the referenced element is to be located within the current document.

Parts of an XML document can be specified by means of other more sophisticated mechanisms using a special language called Xpath, also defined by the W3C. This is particularly useful where the elements to be linked to do not bear identifiers and must therefore be located by some other means.

## Special kinds of Linking

The following special purpose linking attributes are defined for every element in the TEI Lite scheme:

*@ana* links an element with its interpretation.

*@corresp* links an element with one or more other corresponding elements.

*@next* links an element to the next element in an aggregate.

*@prev* links an element to the previous element in an aggregate.

The *@ana* (analysis) attribute is intended for use where a set of abstract analyses or interpretations have been defined somewhere within a document, as further discussed in section 15. For example, a linguistic analysis of the sentence ‘John loves Nancy’ might be encoded as follows:

<**seg** **ana**="SVO" **type**="sentence">  
 <**seg** **ana**="#NP1" **type**="lex">John</**seg**>  
 <**seg** **ana**="#VVI" **type**="lex">loves</**seg**>  
 <**seg** **ana**="#NP1" **type**="lex">Nancy</**seg**>  
</**seg**>

This encoding implies the existence elsewhere in the document of elements with identifiers SVO, NP1, and VV1 where the significance of these particular codes is explained. Note the use of the <seg> element to mark particular components of the analysis, distinguished by the *@type* attribute.

The *@corresp* (corresponding) attribute provides a simple way of representing some form of correspondence between two elements in a text. For example, in a multilingual text, it may be used to link translation equivalents, as in the following example

<**seg** **corresp**="#EN1" **xml:id**="FR1"  
 **xml:lang**="fr">Jean  
 aime Nancy</**seg**>  
<**seg** **corresp**="#FR1" **xml:id**="EN1"  
 **xml:lang**="en">John loves  
 Nancy</**seg**>

The same mechanism may be used for a variety of purposes. In the following example, it has been used to represent the correspondences between ‘the show’ and ‘Shirley’, and between ‘NBC’ and ‘the network’:

<**p**>  
 <**title** **xml:id**="shirley">Shirley</**title**>, which  
 made its Friday night debut only a month ago, was not listed on <**name** **xml:id**="nbc">NBC</**name**>'s new schedule, although <**seg** **corresp**="#nbc" **xml:id**="network">the network</**seg**>  
 says <**seg** **corresp**="#shirley" **xml:id**="show">the show</**seg**> still is being  
 considered.  
</**p**>

The *@next* and *@prev* attributes provide a simple way of linking together the components of a discontinuous element, as in the following example:

<**q** **next**="#Q1b" **xml:id**="Q1a">Who-e debel you?</**q**> —  
 he at last said — <**q** **prev**="#Q1a" **xml:id**="Q1b">you no speak-e, damme, I kill-e.</**q**> And so  
 saying, the lighted tomahawk began flourishing about me in the dark.

# Editorial Interventions

The process of encoding an electronic text has much in common with the process of editing a manuscript or other text for printed publication. In either case a conscientious editor may wish to record both the original state of the source and any editorial correction or other change made in it. The elements discussed in this and the next section provide some facilities for meeting these needs.

## Correction and Normalization

The following elements may be used to mark correction, that is editorial changes introduced where the editor believes the original to be erroneous:

**corr** (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text.

**sic** (Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate.

The following elements may be used to mark normalization, that is editorial changes introduced for the sake of consistency or modernization of a text:

**orig** (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected.

**reg** (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense.

As an example, consider this extract from the quarto printing of Shakespeare's *Henry V*.

... for his nose was as sharp as a pen and a table of green feelds

A modern editor might wish to make a number of interventions here, specifically to modernize (or normalise) the Elizabethan spellings of a' and feelds for he and fields respectively. He or she might also want to emend table to babbl'd, following an editorial tradition that goes back to the 18th century Shakespearian scholar Lewis Theobald. The following encoding would then be appropriate:

... for his nose was as sharp as  
 a pen and <**reg**>he</**reg**>  
<**corr** **resp**="#Theobald">babbl'd</**corr**> of green   
<**reg**>fields</**reg**>

A more conservative or source-oriented editor, however, might want to retain the original, but at the same time signal that some of the readings it contains are in some sense anomalous:

... for his nose was as sharp as a pen and  
<**orig**>a</**orig**>  
<**sic**>table</**sic**> of green   
<**orig**>feelds</**orig**>

Finally, a modern digital editor may decide to combine both possibilities in a single composite text, using the <choice> element.

**choice** groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text.

This allows an editor to mark where alternative readings are possible:

... for his nose was as sharp as a pen and  
<**choice**>  
 <**orig**>a</**orig**>  
 <**reg**>he</**reg**>  
</**choice**>  
<**choice**>  
 <**corr** **resp**="#Theobald">babbl'd</**corr**>  
 <**sic**>table</**sic**>  
</**choice**> of green  
  
<**choice**>  
 <**orig**>feelds</**orig**>  
 <**reg**>fields</**reg**>  
</**choice**>

## Omissions, Deletions, and Additions

In addition to correcting or normalizing words and phrases, editors and transcribers may also supply missing material, omit material, or transcribe material deleted or crossed out in the source. In addition, some material may be particularly hard to transcribe because it is hard to make out on the page. The following elements may be used to record such phenomena:

**add** (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector.

**gap** indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible.

**del** (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector.

**unclear** contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source.

These elements may be used to record changes made by an editor, by the transcriber, or (in manuscript material) by the author or scribe. For example, if the source for an electronic text read ‘The following elements are provided for for simple editorial interventions.’ then it might be felt desirable to correct the obvious error, but at the same time to record the deletion of the superfluous second for, thus:

The following elements are provided for <**del** **resp**="#LB">for</**del**> simple editorial interventions.

The attribute value #LB on the *@resp* attribute is used to point to a fuller definition (typically in a <respStmt> element) for the agency responsible for correcting the duplication of for.

If the source read ‘The following elements provided for simple editorial interventions.’ (i.e. if the verb had been inadvertently dropped) then the corrected text might read:

The following elements <**add** **resp**="#LB">are</**add**> provided for simple editorial interventions.

These elements are also used to record authorial changes in manuscripts. A manuscript in which the author has first written ‘How it galls me, what a galling shadow’, then crossed out the word galls and inserted dogs might be encoded thus:

How it <**del** **hand**="#DHL" **type**="overstrike">galls</**del**>  
<**add** **hand**="#DHL" **place**="supralinear">dogs</**add**> me, what a galling shadow

Again, the code #DHL points to another location where more information about the hand concerned is to be found[[3]](#footnote-4).

Similarly, the <unclear> and <gap> elements may be used together to indicate the omission of illegible material; the following example also shows the use of <add> for a conjectural emendation:

One hundred  
 &amp; twenty good regulars joined to me <**unclear**>  
 <**gap** **reason**="indecipherable"/>  
</**unclear**>  
 &amp; instantly, would aid me signally <**add** **hand**="#ed">in?</**add**> an enterprise against  
 Wilmington.

The <del> element marks material which has been transcribed as part of the electronic text despite being marked as deleted, while <gap> marks the location of material which is omitted from the electronic text, whether it is legible or not. A language corpus, for example, might omit long quotations in foreign languages:

<**p**> ... An example of a list appearing in a fief  
 ledger of <**name** **type**="place">Koldinghus</**name**>  
 <**date**>1611/12</**date**> is given below. It shows cash income from a sale of  
 honey.</**p**>  
<**gap**>  
 <**desc**>quotation from ledger (in Danish)</**desc**>  
</**gap**>  
<**p**>A description of the  
 overall structure of the account is once again ... </**p**>

Other corpora (particular those constructed before the widespread use of scanners) systematically omit figures and mathematics:

<**p**>At the bottom of your screen below the mode line is the <**term**>minibuffer</**term**>. This is  
 the area where Emacs echoes the commands you enter and where you specify filenames for Emacs  
 to find, values for search and replace, and so on. <**gap** **reason**="graphic">  
  <**desc**>diagram of  
     Emacs screen</**desc**>  
 </**gap**>  
</**p**>

The full TEI scheme provides more precise ways of capturing different aspects of a transcription, distinguishing for example between text added or supplied by the encoder and text indicated as supplied or deleted in the source. TEI Lite does not provide different tags for these purposes.

## Abbreviations and their Expansion

Like names, dates, and numbers, abbreviations may be transcribed as they stand or expanded; they may be left unmarked, or encoded using the following elements:

**abbr** (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.

**expan** (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation.

The <abbr> element is useful as a means of distinguishing semi-lexical items such as acronyms or jargon:

We can sum up the above  
 discussion as follows: the identity of a <**abbr**>CC</**abbr**> is defined by that calibration of  
 values which motivates the elements of its <**abbr**>GSP</**abbr**>;

Every manufacturer of <**abbr**>3GL</**abbr**> or  
<**abbr**>4GL</**abbr**> languages is currently nailing on <**abbr**>OOP</**abbr**> extensions

The *@type* attribute may be used to distinguish types of abbreviation by their function.

The <expan> element is used to mark an expansion supplied by an encoder. This element is particularly useful in the transcription of manuscript materials. For example, the character p with a bar through its descender as a conventional representation for the word per is commonly encountered in Medieval European manuscripts. An encoder may choose to expand this as follows:

<**expan**>per</**expan**>

The expansion corresponding with an abbreviated form may not always contain the same letters as the abbreviation. Where it does, however, common editorial practice is to italicize or otherwise signal which letters have been supplied. The <expan> element should not be used for this purpose since its function is to indicate an expanded form, not a part of one. For example, consider the common abbreviation wt (for with) found in medieval texts. In a modern edition, an editor might wish to represent this as ‘w*i*t*h*’, italicising the letters not found in the source. One simple means of achieving that would be an encoding such as the follow

<**expan**>w<**hi** **rend**="it">i</**hi**>t<**hi** **rend**="it">h</**hi**>  
</**expan**>

The full TEI also provides elements <ex> and <am> for use in this situation, but these are not included in the TEI Lite schema.

To record both an abbreviation and its expansion, the <choice> element mentioned above may be used to group the abbreviated form with its proposed expansion:

<**choice**>  
 <**abbr**>wt</**abbr**>  
 <**expan**>with</**expan**>  
</**choice**>

# Names, Dates, and Numbers

The TEI scheme defines elements for a large number of ‘data-like’ features which may appear almost anywhere within almost any kind of text. These features may be of particular interest in a range of disciplines; they all relate to objects external to the text itself, such as the names of persons and places, numbers and dates. They also pose particular problems for many natural language processing (NLP) applications because of the variety of ways in which they may be presented within a text. The elements described here, by making such features explicit, reduce the complexity of processing texts containing them.

## Names and Referring Strings

A referring string is a phrase which refers to some person, place, object, etc. Two elements are provided to mark such strings:

**rs** (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string.

**name** (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

The *@type* attribute is used to distinguish amongst (for example) names of persons, places and organizations, where this is possible:

<**q**>My dear <**rs** **type**="person">Mr. Bennet</**rs**>, </**q**>  
 said his lady to him one day,   
<**q**>have you heard that <**rs** **type**="place">Netherfield Park</**rs**>  
 is let at last?</**q**>

It being one of the principles of the <**rs** **type**="organization">Circumlocution Office</**rs**> never, on any account whatsoever, to give a  
 straightforward answer, <**rs** **type**="person">Mr Barnacle</**rs**> said,   
<**q**>Possibly.</**q**>

As the following example shows, the <rs> element may be used for any reference to a person, place, etc, not necessarily one in the form of a proper noun or noun phrase.

<**q**>My dear <**rs** **type**="person">Mr. Bennet</**rs**>,</**q**>  
 said <**rs** **type**="person">his lady</**rs**> to him one day...

The <name> element by contrast is provided for the special case of referencing strings which consist only of proper nouns; it may be used synonymously with the <rs> element, or nested within it if a referring string contains a mixture of common and proper nouns.

Simply tagging something as a name is rarely enough to enable automatic processing of personal names into the canonical forms usually required for reference purposes. The name as it appears in the text may be inconsistently spelled, partial, or vague. Moreover, name prefixes such as van or de la, may or may not be included as part of the reference form of a name, depending on the language and country of origin of the bearer.

The *@key* attribute provides an alternative normalized identifier for the object being named, like a database record key. It may thus be useful as a means of gathering together all references to the same individual or location scattered throughout a document:

<**q**>My dear <**rs** **key**="BENM1" **type**="person">Mr.  
   Bennet</**rs**>, </**q**> said <**rs** **key**="BENM2" **type**="person">his lady</**rs**> to him one day,   
<**q**>have  
 you heard that <**rs** **key**="NETP1" **type**="place">Netherfield Park</**rs**> is let at  
 last?</**q**>

This use should be distinguished from the case of the <reg> (regularization) element, which provides a means of marking the standard form of a referencing string as demonstrated below:

<**name** **key**="WADLM1" **type**="person">  
 <**choice**>  
  <**sic**>Walter de la Mare</**sic**>  
  <**reg**>de la Mare, Walter</**reg**>  
 </**choice**>  
</**name**> was  
 born at <**name** **key**="Ch1" **type**="place">Charlton</**name**>, in <**name** **key**="KT1" **type**="county">Kent</**name**>, in 1873.

The <index> element discussed in <indexing> may be more appropriate if the function of the regularization is to provide a consistent index:

<**p**>  
 <**name** **type**="place">Montaillou</**name**> is not a  
 large parish. At the time of the events which led to <**name** **type**="person">Fournier</**name**>'s  
<**index**>  
  <**term**>Benedict XII, Pope of Avignon (Jacques Fournier)</**term**>  
 </**index**>  
 investigations, the local population consisted of between 200 and 250  
 inhabitants.  
</**p**>

Although adequate for many simple applications, these methods have two inconveniences: if the name occurs many times, then its regularised form must be repeated many times; and the burden of additional XML markup in the body of the text may be inconvenient to maintain and complex to process. For applications such as onomastics, relating to persons or places named rather than the name itself, or wherever a detailed analysis of the component parts of a name is needed, the full TEI Guidelines provide a range of other solutions.

## Dates and Times

Tags for the more detailed encoding of times and dates include the following:

**date** contains a date in any format.

**time** contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format.

These elements have a number of attributes which can be used to provide normalised versions of their values.

**att.datable** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| *@period* | supplies a pointer to some location defining a named period of time within which the datable item is understood to have occurred. |
| *@when [att.datable.w3c]* | supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd. |

The *@when* attribute specifies a normalized form for the date or time, using one of the standard formats defined by ISO 8601. Partial dates or times (e.g. ‘1990’, ‘September 1990’, ‘twelvish’) can be expressed by omitting a part of the value supplied, as in the following examples:

<**date** **when**="1980-02-21">21  
 Feb 1980</**date**>  
<**date** **when**="1990">1990</**date**>  
<**date** **when**="1990-09">September 1990</**date**>  
<**date** **when**="--09">September</**date**>  
<**date** **when**="2001-09-11T12:48:00">Sept 11th, 12 minutes before 9  
 am</**date**>

Note in the last example the use of a normalized representation for the date string which includes a time: this example could thus equally well be tagged using the <time> element.

Given on the <**date** **when**="1977-06-12">Twelfth  
 Day of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the  
 Republic the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</**date**>

<**l**>specially when it's nine below zero</**l**>  
<**l**>and <**time** **when**="15:00:00">three o'clock in the afternoon</**time**>  
</**l**>

## Numbers

Numbers can be written with either letters or digits (twenty-one, xxi, and 21) and their presentation is language-dependent (e.g. English 5th becomes Greek 5.; English 123,456.78 equals French 123.456,78). In natural-language processing or machine-translation applications, it is often helpful to distinguish them from other, more ‘lexical’ parts of the text. In other applications, the ability to record a number's value in standard notation is important. The <num> element provides this possibility:

**num** (number) contains a number, written in any form.

For example:

<**num** **value**="33">xxxiii</**num**>  
<**num** **type**="cardinal" **value**="21">twenty-one</**num**>  
<**num** **type**="percentage" **value**="10">ten percent</**num**>  
<**num** **type**="percentage" **value**="10">10%</**num**>  
<**num** **type**="ordinal" **value**="5">5th</**num**>

# Lists

The element <list> is used to mark any kind of list. A list is a sequence of text items, which may be numbered, bulleted, or arranged as a glossary list. Each item may be preceded by an item label (in a glossary list, this label is the term being defined):

**list** contains any sequence of items organized as a list.

**item** contains one component of a list.

**label** contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary.

Individual list items are tagged with <item>. The first <item> may optionally be preceded by a <head>, which gives a heading for the list. The numbering of a list may be omitted, indicated using the *@n* attribute on each item, or (rarely) tagged as content using the <label> element. The following are all thus equivalent:

<**list**>  
 <**head**>A short list</**head**>  
 <**item**>First item in list.</**item**>  
 <**item**>Second item in list.</**item**>  
 <**item**>Third item in list.</**item**>  
</**list**>  
<**list**>  
 <**head**>A short list</**head**>  
 <**item** **n**="1">First item in list.</**item**>  
 <**item** **n**="2">Second item in list.</**item**>  
 <**item** **n**="3">Third item in list.</**item**>  
</**list**>  
<**list**>  
 <**head**>A short list</**head**>  
 <**label**>1</**label**>  
 <**item**>First item in list.</**item**>  
 <**label**>2</**label**>  
 <**item**>Second item in list.</**item**>  
 <**label**>3</**label**>  
 <**item**>Third item in list.</**item**>  
</**list**>

The styles should not be mixed in the same list.

A simple two-column table may be treated as a glossary list, tagged <list type="gloss">. Here, each item comprises a term and a gloss, marked with <label> and <item> respectively. These correspond to the elements <term> and <gloss>, which can occur anywhere in prose text.

<**list** **type**="gloss">  
 <**head**>Vocabulary</**head**>  
 <**label** **xml:lang**="enm">nu</**label**>  
 <**item**>now</**item**>  
 <**label** **xml:lang**="enm">lhude</**label**>  
 <**item**>loudly</**item**>  
 <**label** **xml:lang**="enm">bloweth</**label**>  
 <**item**>blooms</**item**>  
 <**label** **xml:lang**="enm">med</**label**>  
 <**item**>meadow</**item**>  
 <**label** **xml:lang**="enm">wude</**label**>  
 <**item**>wood</**item**>  
 <**label** **xml:lang**="enm">awe</**label**>  
 <**item**>ewe</**item**>  
 <**label** **xml:lang**="enm">lhouth</**label**>  
 <**item**>lows</**item**>  
 <**label** **xml:lang**="enm">sterteth</**label**>  
 <**item**>bounds, frisks</**item**>  
 <**label** **xml:lang**="enm">verteth</**label**>  
 <**item** **xml:lang**="la">pedit</**item**>  
 <**label** **xml:lang**="enm">murie</**label**>  
 <**item**>merrily</**item**>  
 <**label** **xml:lang**="enm">swik</**label**>  
 <**item**>cease</**item**>  
 <**label** **xml:lang**="enm">naver</**label**>  
 <**item**>never</**item**>  
</**list**>

Where the internal structure of a list item is more complex, it may be preferable to regard the list as a table, for which special-purpose tagging is defined below (13).

Lists of whatever kind can, of course, nest within list items to any depth required. Here, for example, a glossary list contains two items, each of which is itself a simple list:

<**list** **type**="gloss">  
 <**label**>EVIL</**label**>  
 <**item**>  
  <**list** **type**="simple">  
   <**item**>I am cast upon a horrible desolate island, void of all hope of recovery.</**item**>  
   <**item**>I am singled out and separated as it were from all the world to be miserable.</**item**>  
   <**item**>I am divided from mankind — a solitaire; one banished from human society.</**item**>  
  </**list**>  
 </**item**>  
 <**label**>GOOD</**label**>  
 <**item**>  
  <**list** **type**="simple">  
   <**item**>But I am alive; and not drowned, as all my ship's company were.</**item**>  
   <**item**>But I am singled out, too, from all the ship's crew, to be spared from  
       death...</**item**>  
   <**item**>But I am not starved, and perishing on a barren place, affording no  
       sustenances....</**item**>  
  </**list**>  
 </**item**>  
</**list**>

A list need not necessarily be displayed in list format. For example,

<**p**>On those remote pages it is written that animals  
 are divided into <**list** **rend**="run-on">  
  <**item** **n**="a">those that belong to the Emperor,</**item**>  
  <**item** **n**="b"> embalmed ones, </**item**>  
  <**item** **n**="c"> those that are trained, </**item**>  
  <**item** **n**="d"> suckling pigs, </**item**>  
  <**item** **n**="e"> mermaids, </**item**>  
  <**item** **n**="f"> fabulous ones, </**item**>  
  <**item** **n**="g"> stray dogs, </**item**>  
  <**item** **n**="h"> those that are included in this classification, </**item**>  
  <**item** **n**="i"> those that tremble as if they were mad, </**item**>  
  <**item** **n**="j"> innumerable ones, </**item**>  
  <**item** **n**="k"> those drawn with a very fine camel's-hair brush, </**item**>  
  <**item** **n**="l"> others, </**item**>  
  <**item** **n**="m"> those that have just broken a flower vase, </**item**>  
  <**item** **n**="n"> those that resemble flies from a distance.</**item**>  
 </**list**>  
</**p**>

Lists of bibliographic items should be tagged using the <listBibl> element, described in the next section.

# Bibliographic Citations

It is often useful to distinguish bibliographic citations where they occur within texts being transcribed for research, if only so that they will be properly formatted when the text is printed out. The element <bibl> is provided for this purpose. Where the components of a bibliographic reference are to be distinguished, the following elements may be used as appropriate. It is generally useful to mark at least those parts (such as the titles of articles, books, and journals) which will need special formatting. The other elements are provided for cases where particular interest attaches to such details.

**bibl** (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

**author** in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.

**biblScope** (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work.

**date** contains a date in any format.

**editor** contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc.

**publisher** provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

**pubPlace** (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

**title** contains a title for any kind of work.

For example, the following editorial note might be transcribed as shown:

He was a member of Parliament for Warwickshire in 1445, and died March 14, 1470 (according to Kittredge, *Harvard Studies* 5. 88ff).

He was a member of Parliament for Warwickshire  
 in 1445, and died March 14, 1470 (according to <**bibl**>  
 <**author**>Kittredge</**author**>,  
<**title**>Harvard Studies</**title**>  
 <**biblScope**>5. 88ff</**biblScope**>  
</**bibl**>).

For lists of bibliographic citations, the <listBibl> element should be used; it may contain a series of <bibl> elements.

# Tables

Tables represent a challenge for any text processing system, but simple tables, at least, appear in so many texts that even in the simplified TEI tag set presented here, markup for tables is necessary. The following elements are provided for this purpose:

**table** contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns.

**row** contains one row of a table.

**cell** contains one cell of a table.

For example, Defoe uses mortality tables like the following in the *Journal of the Plague Year* to show the rise and ebb of the epidemic:

<**p**>It was indeed coming on amain, for the burials  
 that same week were in the next adjoining parishes thus:— <**table** **cols**="4" **rows**="5">  
  <**row** **role**="data">  
   <**cell** **role**="label">St. Leonard's, Shoreditch</**cell**>  
   <**cell**>64</**cell**>  
   <**cell**>84</**cell**>  
   <**cell**>119</**cell**>  
  </**row**>  
  <**row** **role**="data">  
   <**cell** **role**="label">St. Botolph's, Bishopsgate</**cell**>  
   <**cell**>65</**cell**>  
   <**cell**>105</**cell**>  
   <**cell**>116</**cell**>  
  </**row**>  
  <**row** **role**="data">  
   <**cell** **role**="label">St. Giles's, Cripplegate</**cell**>  
   <**cell**>213</**cell**>  
   <**cell**>421</**cell**>  
   <**cell**>554</**cell**>  
  </**row**>  
 </**table**>  
</**p**>  
<**p**>This shutting up of houses was at first counted a very cruel and unchristian  
 method, and the poor people so confined made bitter lamentations. ... </**p**>

# Figures and Graphics

Not all the components of a document are necessarily textual. The most straightforward text will often contain diagrams or illustrations, to say nothing of documents in which image and text are inextricably intertwined, or electronic resources in which the two are complementary.

The encoder may simply record the presence of a graphic within the text, possibly with a brief description of its content, and may also provide a link to a digitized version of the graphic, using the following elements:

**graphic** indicates the location of a graphic or illustration, either forming part of a text, or providing an image of it.

**figure** groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration, formula, or figure.

**figDesc** (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it.

Any textual information accompanying the graphic, such as a heading and/or caption, may be included within the <figure> element itself, in a <head> and one or more <p> elements, as also may any text appearing within the graphic itself. It is strongly recommended that a prose description of the image be supplied, as the content of a <figDesc> element, for the use of applications which are not able to render the graphic, and to render the document accessible to vision-impaired readers. (Such text is not normally considered part of the document proper.)

The simplest use for these elements is to mark the position of a graphic and provide a link to it, as in this example;

<**pb** **n**="412"/>  
<**figure**>  
 <**graphic** **url**="p412fig.png"/>  
</**figure**>  
<**pb** **n**="413"/>

This indicates that the graphic contained by the file p412fig.png appears between pages 412 and 413.

The <graphic> element can appear anywhere that textual content is permitted, within but not between paragraphs or headings. In the following example, the encoder has decided to treat a specific printer's ornament as a heading:

<**head**>  
 <**graphic** **url**="http://www.iath.virginia.edu/gants/Ornaments/Heads/hp-ral02.gif"/>  
</**head**>

More usually, a graphic will have at the least an identifying title, which may be encoded using the <head> element, or a number of figures may be grouped together in a particular structure. It is also often convenient to include a brief description of the image. The <figure> element provides a means of wrapping one or more such elements together as a kind of graphic ‘block’:

<**figure**>  
 <**graphic** **url**="fessipic.png"/>  
 <**head**>Mr Fezziwig's Ball</**head**>  
 <**figDesc**>A Cruikshank  
   engraving showing Mr Fezziwig leading a group of revellers.</**figDesc**>  
</**figure**>

These cases should be carefully distinguished from the case where an encoded text is complemented by a collection of digital images, maintained as a distinct resource. The *@facs* attribute may be used to associate any element in an encoded text with a digital facsimile of it. In the simple case where only page images are available, the *@facs* attribute on the <pb> element may be used to associate each image with an appropriate point in the text:

<**text**>  
 <**pb** **facs**="page1.png" **n**="1"/>  
<!-- text contained on page 1 is encoded here -->  
 <**pb** **facs**="page2.png" **n**="2"/>  
<!-- text contained on page 2 is encoded here -->  
</**text**>

This method is only appropriate in the simple case where each digital image file page1.png etc. corresponds with a single transcribed and encoded page. If more detailed alignment of image and transcription is required, for example because the image files actually represent double page spreads, more sophisticated mechanisms are provided in the full TEI Guidelines.

# Interpretation and Analysis

It is often said that *all* markup is a form of interpretation or analysis. While it is certainly difficult, and may be impossible, to distinguish firmly between ‘objective’ and ‘subjective’ information in any universal way, it remains true that judgments concerning the latter are typically regarded as more likely to provide controversy than those concerning the former. Many scholars therefore prefer to record such interpretations only if it is possible to alert the reader that they are considered more open to dispute, than the rest of the markup. This section describes some of the elements provided by the TEI scheme to meet this need.

## Orthographic Sentences

Interpretation typically ranges across the whole of a text, with no particular respect to other structural units. A useful preliminary to intensive interpretation is therefore to segment the text into discrete and identifiable units, each of which can then bear a label for use as a sort of ‘canonical reference’. To facilitate such uses, these units may not cross each other, nor nest within each other. They may conveniently be represented using the following element:

**s** (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text.

As the name suggests, the <s> element is most commonly used (in linguistic applications at least) for marking orthographic sentences, that is, units defined by orthographic features such as punctuation. For example, the passage from *Jane Eyre* discussed earlier might be divided into s-units as follows:

<**pb** **n**="474"/>  
<**div** **n**="38" **type**="chapter">  
 <**p**>  
  <**s** **n**="001">Reader, I married him.</**s**>  
  <**s** **n**="002">A quiet wedding we had:</**s**>  
  <**s** **n**="003">he  
     and I, the parson and clerk, were alone present.</**s**>  
  <**s** **n**="004">When we got back from  
     church, I went into the kitchen of the manor-house, where Mary was cooking the dinner, and  
     John cleaning the knives, and I said —</**s**>  
 </**p**>  
 <**p**>  
  <**q**>  
   <**s** **n**="005">Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning.</**s**>  
  </**q**> ... </**p**>  
</**div**>

Note that <s> elements cannot nest: the beginning of one <s> element implies that the previous one has finished. When s-units are tagged as shown above, it is advisable to tag the entire text end-to-end, so that every word in the text being analysed will be contained by exactly one <s> element, whose identifier can then be used to specify a unique reference for it. If the identifiers used are unique within the document, then the *@xml:id* attribute might be used in preference to the *@n* used in the above example.

## Words and punctuation

Tokenization, that is, the identification of lexical or non-lexical tokens within a text, is a very common requirement for all kinds of textual analysis, and not an entirely trivial one. The decision as to whether, for example, ‘can't’ in English or ‘du’ in French should be treated as one word or two is not simple. Consequently it is often useful to make explicit the preferred tokenization in a marked up text. The following elements are available for this purpose:

**w** (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word.

**pc** (punctuation character) contains a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark.

For example, the output from a part of speech tagger might be recorded in TEI Lite as follows:

<**s** **n**="1">  
 <**w** **ana**="#NP0">Marley</**w**>  
 <**w** **ana**="#VBD">was</**w**>  
 <**w** **ana**="#AJ0">dead</**w**>  
 <**pc**>:</**pc**>  
 <**w** **ana**="#TO0">to</**w**>  
 <**w** **ana**="#VBB">begin</**w**>  
 <**w** **ana**="#PRP">with</**w**>  
 <**pc**>. </**pc**>  
</**s**>

In this example, each word has been decorated with an automatically generated part of speech code, using the *@ana* attribute discussed in section 8.3 above. The <w> also provides for each word to be associated with a root form or lemma, either explicitly using the *@lemma* attribute, or by reference, using the *@lemmaRef* attribute, as in this example:

...<**w** **ana**="#VBD" **lemma**="be"  
 **lemmaRef**="http://www.myLexicon.com/be">was</**w**> ...

## General-Purpose Interpretation Elements

The <w> element is a specialisation of the <seg> element which has already been introduced for use in identifying otherwise unmarked targets of cross references and hypertext links (see section 8); it identifies some phrase-level portion of text to which the encoder may assign a user-specified *@type*, as well as a unique identifier; it may thus be used to tag textual features for which there is no other provision in the published TEI Guidelines.

For example, the Guidelines provide no ‘apostrophe’ element to mark parts of a literary text in which the narrator addresses the reader (or hearer) directly. One approach might be to regard these as instances of the <q> element, distinguished from others by an appropriate value for the *@who* attribute. A possibly simpler, and certainly more general, solution would however be to use the <seg> element as follows:

<**div** **n**="38" **type**="chapter">  
 <**p**>  
  <**seg** **type**="apostrophe">Reader, I married him.</**seg**> A quiet wedding we had: ...</**p**>  
</**div**>

The *@type* attribute on the <seg> element can take any value, and so can be used to record phrase-level phenomena of any kind; it is good practice to record the values used and their significance in the header.

A <seg> element of one type (unlike the <s> element which it superficially resembles) can be nested within a <seg> element of the same or another type. This enables quite complex structures to be represented; some examples were given in section 8.3 above. However, because it must respect the requirement that elements be properly nested and may not cut across each other, it cannot cope with the common requirement to associate an interpretation with arbitrary segments of a text which may completely ignore the document hierarchy. It also requires that the interpretation itself be represented by a single coded value in the *@type* attribute.

Neither restriction applies to the <interp> element, which provides powerful features for the encoding of quite complex interpretive information in a relatively straightforward manner.

**interp** (interpretation) summarizes a specific interpretative annotation which can be linked to a span of text.

**interpGrp** (interpretation group) collects together a set of related interpretations which share responsibility or type.

These elements allow the encoder to specify both the class of an interpretation, and the particular instance of that class which the interpretation involves. Thus, whereas with <seg> one can say simply that something is an apostrophe, with <interp> one can say that it is an instance (apostrophe) of a larger class (rhetorical figures).

Moreover, <interp> is a ‘stand off’ element: it does not surround the segments of text which it describes, but instead is linked to the passage in question either by means of the *@ana* attribute discussed in section 8.3 above, or by means of its own *@inst* attribute. This means that any kind of analysis can be represented, independently of the document hierarchy, as well as facilitating the grouping of analyses of a particular type together. A special purpose <interpGrp> element is provided for the latter purpose.

For example, suppose that you wish to mark such diverse aspects of a text as themes or subject matter, rhetorical figures, and the locations of individual scenes of the narrative. Different portions of our sample passage from *Jane Eyre* for example, might be associated with the rhetorical figures of apostrophe, hyperbole, and metaphor; with subject-matter references to churches, servants, cooking, postal service, and honeymoons; and with scenes located in the church, in the kitchen, and in an unspecified location (drawing room?).

These interpretations could be placed anywhere within the <text> element; it is however good practice to put them all in the same place (e.g. a separate section of the front or back matter), as in the following example:

<**back**>  
 <**div** **type**="Interpretations">  
  <**p**>  
   <**interp** **resp**="#LB-MSM"  
    **type**="figureOfSpeech" **xml:id**="fig-apos-1">apostrophe</**interp**>  
   <**interp** **resp**="#LB-MSM"  
    **type**="figureOfSpeech" **xml:id**="fig-hyp-1">hyperbole</**interp**>  
   <**interp** **resp**="#LB-MSM" **type**="setting"  
    **xml:id**="set-church-1">church</**interp**>  
   <**interp** **resp**="#LB-MSM" **type**="reference"  
    **xml:id**="ref-church-1">church</**interp**>  
   <**interp** **resp**="#LB-MSM" **type**="reference"  
    **xml:id**="ref-serv-1">servants</**interp**>  
  </**p**>  
 </**div**>  
</**back**>

The evident redundancy of this encoding can be considerably reduced by using the <interpGrp> element to group together all those <interp> elements which share common attribute values, as follows:

<**back**>  
 <**div** **type**="Interpretations">  
  <**p**>  
   <**interpGrp** **resp**="#LB-MSM"  
    **type**="figureOfSpeech">  
    <**interp** **xml:id**="fig-apos">apostrophe</**interp**>  
    <**interp** **xml:id**="fig-hyp">hyperbole</**interp**>  
    <**interp** **xml:id**="fig-meta">metaphor</**interp**>  
   </**interpGrp**>  
   <**interpGrp** **resp**="#LB-MSM"  
    **type**="scene-setting">  
    <**interp** **xml:id**="set-church">church</**interp**>  
    <**interp** **xml:id**="set-kitch">kitchen</**interp**>  
    <**interp** **xml:id**="set-unspec">unspecified</**interp**>  
   </**interpGrp**>  
   <**interpGrp** **resp**="#LB-MSM"  
    **type**="reference">  
    <**interp** **xml:id**="ref-church">church</**interp**>  
    <**interp** **xml:id**="ref-serv">servants</**interp**>  
    <**interp** **xml:id**="ref-cook">cooking</**interp**>  
   </**interpGrp**>  
  </**p**>  
 </**div**>  
</**back**>

Once these interpretation elements have been defined, they can be linked with the parts of the text to which they apply in either or both of two ways. The *@ana* attribute can be used on whichever element is appropriate:

<**div** **n**="38" **type**="chapter">  
 <**p** **ana**="#set-church #set-kitch"  
  **xml:id**="P38.1">  
  <**s** **ana**="#fig-apos" **xml:id**="P38.1.1">Reader, I  
     married him.</**s**>  
 </**p**>  
</**div**>

Note in this example that since the paragraph has two settings (in the church and in the kitchen), the identifiers of both have been supplied.

Alternatively, the <interp> elements can point to all the parts of the text to which they apply, using their *@inst* attribute:

<**interp** **inst**="#P38.1.1" **resp**="#LB-MSM"  
 **type**="figureOfSpeech" **xml:id**="fig-apos-2">apostrophe</**interp**>  
<**interp** **inst**="#P38.1" **resp**="#LB-MSM"  
 **type**="scene-setting" **xml:id**="set-church-2">church</**interp**>  
<**interp** **inst**="#P38.1" **resp**="#LB-MSM"  
 **type**="scene-setting" **xml:id**="set-kitchen-2">kitchen</**interp**>

The <interp> element is not limited to any particular type of analysis. The literary analysis shown above is but one possibility; one could equally well use <interp> to capture a linguistic part-of-speech analysis. For example, the example sentence given in section 8.3 assumes a linguistic analysis which might be represented as follows:

<**interp** **type**="pos" **xml:id**="NP1">noun  
 phrase, singular</**interp**>  
<**interp** **type**="pos" **xml:id**="VV1">inflected verb, present-tense  
 singular</**interp**> ...

# Technical Documentation

Although the focus of this document is on the use of the TEI scheme for the encoding of existing ‘pre-electronic’ documents, the same scheme may also be used for the encoding of new documents. In the preparation of new documents (such as this one), XML has much to recommend it: the document's structure can be clearly represented, and the same electronic text can be re-used for many purposes — to provide both online hypertext or browsable versions and well-formatted typeset versions from a common source for example.

To facilitate this, the TEI Lite schema includes some elements for marking features of technical documents in general, and of XML-related documents in particular.

## Additional Elements for Technical Documents

The following elements may be used to mark particular features of technical documents:

**eg** (example) contains any kind of illustrative example.

**code** contains literal code from some formal language such as a programming language.

**ident** (identifier) contains an identifier or name for an object of some kind in a formal language. <ident> is used for tokens such as variable names, class names, type names, function names etc. in formal programming languages.

**gi** (element name) contains the name (generic identifier) of an element.

**att** (attribute) contains the name of an attribute appearing within running text.

**formula** contains a mathematical or other formula.

**val** (value) contains a single attribute value.

The following example shows how these elements might be used to encode a passage from a tutorial introducing the Fortran programming language:

<**p**>It is traditional to introduce a language with a  
 program like the following: <**eg** **xml:space**="preserve"> CHAR\*12 GRTG           GRTG = 'HELLO WORLD'            PRINT \*, GRTG            END         </**eg**>  
</**p**>  
<**p**>This simple example first declares a variable <**ident**>GRTG</**ident**>, in the line  
<**code**>CHAR\*12 GRTG</**code**>, which identifies <**ident**>GRTG</**ident**> as consisting of 12 bytes  
 of type <**ident**>CHAR</**ident**>. To this variable, the value <**val**>HELLO WORLD</**val**> is then  
 assigned.</**p**>

A formatting application, given a text like that above, can be instructed to format examples appropriately (e.g. to preserve line breaks, or to use a distinctive font). Similarly, the use of tags such as <ident> greatly facilitates the construction of a useful index.

The <formula> element should be used to enclose a mathematical or chemical formula presented within the text as a distinct item. Since formulae generally include a large variety of special typographic features not otherwise present in ordinary text, it will usually be necessary to present the body of the formula in a specialized notation. The notation used should be specified by the *@notation* attribute, as in the following example:

<**formula** **notation**="tex"> \begin{math}E =  
 mc^{2}\end{math} </**formula**>

A particular problem arises when XML encoding is the subject of discussion within a technical document, itself encoded in XML. In such a document, it is clearly essential to distinguish clearly the markup occurring within examples from that marking up the document itself, and end-tags are highly likely to occur. One simple solution is to use the predefined entity reference &lt; to represent each < character which marks the start of an XML tag within the examples. A more general solution is to mark off the whole body of each example as containing data which is not to be scanned for XML mark-up by the parser. This is achieved by enclosing it within a special XML construct called a CDATA marked section, as in the following example:

<p>A list should be encoded as  
 follows: <eg><![ CDATA [ <list> <item>First item in the  
 list</item> <item>Second item</item> </list> ]]> </eg> The  
 <gi>list</gi> element consists of a series of <gi>item</gi>  
 elements.

The <list> element used within the example above will not be regarded as forming part of the document proper, because it is embedded within a marked section (beginning with the special markup declaration <![CDATA[ , and ending with ]]>).

Note also the use of the <gi> element to tag references to element names (or generic identifiers) within the body of the text.

## Generated Divisions

Most modern document production systems have the ability to generate automatically whole sections such as a table of contents or an index. The TEI Lite scheme provides an element to mark the location at which such a generated section should be placed.

**divGen** (automatically generated text division) indicates the location at which a textual division generated automatically by a text-processing application is to appear.

The <divGen> element can be placed anywhere that a division element would be legal, as in the following example:

<**front**>  
 <**titlePage**>  
<!-- ... -->  
 </**titlePage**>  
 <**divGen** **type**="toc"/>  
 <**div**>  
  <**head**>Preface</**head**>  
<!-- ... -->  
 </**div**>  
</**front**>  
<**body**>  
<!-- ... -->  
</**body**>  
<**back**>  
 <**div**>  
  <**head**>Appendix</**head**>  
<!-- ... -->  
 </**div**>  
 <**divGen** **n**="Index" **type**="index"/>  
</**back**>

This example also demonstrates the use of the *@type* attribute to distinguish the different kinds of division to be generated: in the first case a table of contents (a toc) and in the second an index.

When an existing index or table of contents is to be encoded (rather than one being generated) for some reason, the <list> element discussed in section 11 should be used.

## Index Generation

While production of a table of contents from a properly tagged document is generally unproblematic for an automatic processor, the production of a good quality index will often require more careful tagging. It may not be enough simply to produce a list of all parts tagged in some particular way, although extracting (for example) all occurrences of elements such as <term> or <name> will often be a good departure point for an index.

The TEI schema provides a special purpose <index> tag which may be used to mark both the parts of the document which should be indexed, and how the indexing should be done.

**index** (index entry) marks a location to be indexed for whatever purpose.

For example, the second paragraph of this section might include the following:

... TEI lite also provides a special purpose  
<**gi**>index</**gi**> tag   
<**index**>  
 <**term**>indexing</**term**>  
</**index**>  
<**index**>  
 <**term**>index (tag)</**term**>  
 <**index**>  
  <**term**>use in index generation</**term**>  
 </**index**>  
</**index**>  
 which may be used ...

The <index> element can also be used to provide a form of interpretive or analytic information. For example, in a study of Ovid, it might be desired to record all the poet's references to different figures, for comparative stylistic study. In the following lines of the *Metamorphoses*, such a study would record the poet's references to Jupiter (as deus, se, and as the subject of confiteor [in inflectional form number 227]), to Jupiter-in-the-guise-of-a-bull (as imago tauri fallacis and the subject of teneo), and so on.[[4]](#footnote-5)

<**l** **n**="3.001">iamque deus posita fallacis  
 imagine tauri</**l**>  
<**l** **n**="3.002">se confessus erat Dictaeaque rura tenebat</**l**>

This need might be met using the <note> element discussed in section in 7, or with the <interp> element discussed in section 15. Here we demonstrate how it might also be satisfied by using the <index> element.

We assume that the object is to generate more than one index: one for names of deities (called *@dn*), another for onomastic references (called *@on*), a third for pronominal references (called *@pr*) and so forth. One way of achieving this might be as follows:

<**l** **n**="3.001">iamque deus posita  
 fallacis imagine tauri <**index** **indexName**="dn">  
  <**term**>Iuppiter</**term**>  
  <**index**>  
   <**term**>deus</**term**>  
  </**index**>  
 </**index**>  
 <**index** **indexName**="on">  
  <**term**>Iuppiter (taurus)</**term**>  
  <**index**>  
   <**term**>imago tauri  
       fallacis</**term**>  
  </**index**>  
 </**index**>  
</**l**>  
<**l** **n**="3.002">se confessus erat Dictaeaque rura tenebat  
<**index** **indexName**="pr">  
  <**term**>Iuppiter</**term**>  
  <**index**>  
   <**term**>se</**term**>  
  </**index**>  
 </**index**>  
 <**index** **indexName**="v">  
  <**term**>Iuppiter</**term**>  
  <**index**>  
   <**term**>confiteor  
       (v227)</**term**>  
  </**index**>  
 </**index**>  
</**l**>

For each <index> element above, an entry will be generated in the appropriate index, using as headword the content of the <term> element it contains; the <term> elements nested within the secondary <index> element in each case provide a secondary keyword. The actual reference will be taken from the context in which the <index> element appears, i.e. in this case the identifier of the <l> element containing it.

## Addresses

The <address> element is used to mark a postal address of any kind. It contains one or more <addrLine> elements, one for each line of the address.

**address** contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual.

**addrLine** (address line) contains one line of a postal address.

Here is a simple example:

<**address**>  
 <**addrLine**>Computer Center (M/C 135)</**addrLine**>  
 <**addrLine**>1940 W. Taylor, Room 124</**addrLine**>  
 <**addrLine**>Chicago, IL 60612-7352</**addrLine**>  
 <**addrLine**>U.S.A.</**addrLine**>  
</**address**>

The individual parts of an address may be further distinguished by using the <name> element discussed above (section 10.1).

<**address**>  
 <**addrLine**>Computer Center (M/C 135)</**addrLine**>  
 <**addrLine**>1940 W. Taylor, Room 124</**addrLine**>  
 <**addrLine**>  
  <**name** **type**="city">Chicago</**name**>, IL 60612-7352</**addrLine**>  
 <**addrLine**>  
  <**name** **type**="country">USA</**name**>  
 </**addrLine**>  
</**address**>

# Character Sets, Diacritics, etc.

With the advent of XML and its adoption of Unicode as the required character set for all documents, most problems previously associated with the representation of the divers languages and writing systems of the world are greatly reduced. For those working with standard forms of the European languages in particular, almost no special action is needed: any XML editor should enable you to input accented letters or other ‘non-ASCII’ characters directly, and they should be stored in the resulting file in a way which is transferable directly between different systems.

There are two important exceptions: the characters & and < may not be entered directly in an XML document, since they have a special significance as initiating markup. They must always be represented as entity references, like this: &amp; or &lt;. Other characters may also be represented by means of entity reference where necessary, for example to retain compatibility with a pre-Unicode processing system.

# Front and Back Matter

## Front Matter

For many purposes, particularly in older texts, the preliminary material such as title pages, prefatory epistles, etc., may provide very useful additional linguistic or social information. P5 provides a set of recommendations for distinguishing the textual elements most commonly encountered in front matter, which are summarized here.

### Title Page

The start of a title page should be marked with the element <titlePage>. All text contained on the page should be transcribed and tagged with the appropriate element from the following list:

**titlePage** (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter.

**docTitle** (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page.

**titlePart** contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page.

**byline** contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.

**docAuthor** (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline).

**docDate** (document date) contains the date of a document, as given on a title page or in a dateline.

**docEdition** (document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document.

**docImprint** (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page.

**epigraph** contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a section or on a title page.

Typeface distinctions should be marked with the *@rend* attribute when necessary, as described above. Very detailed description of the letter spacing and sizing used in ornamental titles is not as yet provided for by the Guidelines. Changes of language should be marked by appropriate use of the *@xml:lang* attribute or the <foreign> element, as necessary. Names of people, places, or organizations, may be tagged using the <name> element wherever they appear if no other more specific element is available.

Two example title pages follow:

<**titlePage** **rend**="Roman">  
 <**docTitle**>  
  <**titlePart** **type**="main"> PARADISE REGAIN'D. A POEM In IV <**hi**>BOOKS</**hi**>. </**titlePart**>  
  <**titlePart**> To which is added <**title**>SAMSON AGONISTES</**title**>. </**titlePart**>  
 </**docTitle**>  
 <**byline**>The Author <**docAuthor**>JOHN MILTON</**docAuthor**>  
 </**byline**>  
 <**docImprint**>  
  <**name**>LONDON</**name**>, Printed by <**name**>J.M.</**name**> for <**name**>John Starkey</**name**>  
   at the <**name**>Mitre</**name**> in <**name**>Fleetstreet</**name**>, near  
 <**name**>Temple-Bar.</**name**>  
 </**docImprint**>  
 <**docDate**>MDCLXXI</**docDate**>  
</**titlePage**>

<**titlePage**>  
 <**docTitle**>  
  <**titlePart** **type**="main"> Lives of the Queens of England, from the Norman  
     Conquest;</**titlePart**>  
  <**titlePart** **type**="sub">with anecdotes of their courts. </**titlePart**>  
 </**docTitle**>  
 <**titlePart**>Now first published from Official Records and other authentic documents private  
   as well as public.</**titlePart**>  
 <**docEdition**>New edition, with corrections and additions</**docEdition**>  
 <**byline**>By <**docAuthor**>Agnes Strickland</**docAuthor**>  
 </**byline**>  
 <**epigraph**>  
  <**q**>The treasures of antiquity laid up in old historic rolls, I opened.</**q**>  
  <**bibl**>BEAUMONT</**bibl**>  
 </**epigraph**>  
 <**docImprint**>Philadelphia: Blanchard and Lea</**docImprint**>  
 <**docDate**>1860.</**docDate**>  
</**titlePage**>

As elsewhere, the *@ref* attribute may be used to link a name with a canonical definition of the entity being named. For example:

<**byline**>By <**docAuthor**>  
  <**name** **ref**="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Agnes\_Strickland">Agnes  
     Strickland</**name**>  
 </**docAuthor**>  
</**byline**>

### Prefatory Matter

Major blocks of text within the front matter should be marked using <div> elements; the following suggested values for the *@type* attribute may be used to distinguish various common types of prefatory matter:

**preface** A foreword or preface addressed to the reader in which the author or publisher explains the content, purpose, or origin of the text

**dedication** A formal offering or dedication of a text to one or more persons or institutions by the author.

**abstract** A summary of the content of a text as continuous prose

**ack** A formal declaration of acknowledgment by the author in which persons and institutions are thanked for their part in the creation of a text

**contents** A table of contents, specifying the structure of a work and listing its constituents. The <list> element should be used to mark its structure.

**frontispiece** A pictorial frontispiece, possibly including some text.

Where other kinds of prefatory matter are encountered, the encoder is at liberty to invent other values for the *@type* attribute.

Like any text division, those in front matter may contain low level structural or non-structural elements as described elsewhere. They will generally begin with a heading or title of some kind which should be tagged using the <head> element. Epistles will contain the following additional elements:

**salute** (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc.

**signed** (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text.

**byline** contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.

**dateline** contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer.

**argument** contains a formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text.

**cit** (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example.

**imprimatur** contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso.

**opener** groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter.

**closer** groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter.

Epistles which appear elsewhere in a text will, of course, contain these same elements.

As an example, the dedication at the start of Milton's *Comus* should be marked up as follows:

<**div** **type**="dedication">  
 <**head**>To the Right Honourable <**name**>JOHN Lord Viscount BRACLY</**name**>, Son and Heir apparent  
   to the Earl of Bridgewater, &amp;c.</**head**>  
 <**salute**>MY LORD,</**salute**>  
 <**p**>THis <**hi**>Poem</**hi**>, which receiv'd its first occasion of Birth from your Self, and  
   others of your Noble Family .... and as in this representation your attendant  
 <**name**>Thyrsis</**name**>, so now in all reall expression</**p**>  
 <**closer**>  
  <**salute**>Your faithfull, and most humble servant</**salute**>  
  <**signed**>  
   <**name**>H. LAWES.</**name**>  
  </**signed**>  
 </**closer**>  
</**div**>

## Back Matter

### Structural Divisions of Back Matter

Because of variations in publishing practice, back matter can contain virtually any of the elements listed above for front matter, and the same elements should be used where this is so. Additionally, back matter may contain the following types of matter within the <back> element. Like the structural divisions of the body, these should be marked as <div> elements, and distinguished by the following suggested values of the *@type* attribute:

**appendix** An ancillary self-contained section of a work, often providing additional but in some sense extra-canonical text.

**glossary** A list of terms associated with definition texts (‘glosses’): this should be encoded as a <<list type="gloss">> element

**notes** A section in which textual or other kinds of notes are gathered together.

**bibliogr** A list of bibliographic citations: this should be encoded as a <listBibl>

**index** Any form of pre-existing index to the work (An index may also be generated for a document by using the <index> element described above).

**colophon** A statement appearing at the end of a book describing the conditions of its physical production.

# The Electronic Title Page

Every TEI text has a header which provides information analogous to that provided by the title page of printed text. The header is introduced by the element <teiHeader> and has four major parts:

**fileDesc** (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file.

**encodingDesc** (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived.

**profileDesc** (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting.

**revisionDesc** (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file.

A corpus or collection of texts with many shared characteristics may have one header for the corpus and individual headers for each component of the corpus. In this case the *@type* attribute indicates the type of header. <teiHeader type="corpus"> introduces the header for corpus-level information.

Some of the header elements contain running prose which consists of one or more <p>s. Others are grouped:

* Elements whose names end in Stmt (for statement) usually enclose a group of elements recording some structured information.
* Elements whose names end in Decl (for declaration) enclose information about specific encoding practices.
* Elements whose names end in Desc (for description) contain a prose description.

## The File Description

The <fileDesc> element is mandatory. It contains a full bibliographic description of the file with the following elements:

**titleStmt** (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content.

**editionStmt** (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text.

**extent** describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units.

**publicationStmt** (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text.

**seriesStmt** (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs.

**notesStmt** (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description.

**sourceDesc** (source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence.

A minimal header has the following structure:

<**teiHeader**>  
 <**fileDesc**>  
  <**titleStmt**>  
<!-- bibliographic description of the digital resource -->  
  </**titleStmt**>  
  <**publicationStmt**>  
<!-- information about how the resource is distributed -->  
  </**publicationStmt**>  
  <**sourceDesc**>  
<!-- information about the sources from which the digital resource is derived -->  
  </**sourceDesc**>  
 </**fileDesc**>  
</**teiHeader**>

### The Title Statement

The following elements can be used in the <titleStmt>:

**title** contains a title for any kind of work.

**author** in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.

**sponsor** specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution.

**funder** (funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text.

**principal** (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text.

**respStmt** (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work.

The title of a digital resource derived from a non-digital one will obviously be similar. However, it is important to distinguish the title of the computer file from that of the source text, for example:

[title of source]: a machine readable transcription [title of source]: electronic edition A machine readable version of: [title of source]

The <respStmt> element contains the following subcomponents:

**resp** (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work.

**name** (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

Example:

<**titleStmt**>  
 <**title**>Two stories by Edgar Allen Poe: a machine readable transcription</**title**>  
 <**author**>Poe, Edgar Allen (1809-1849)</**author**>  
 <**respStmt**>  
  <**resp**>compiled by</**resp**>  
  <**name**>James D. Benson</**name**>  
 </**respStmt**>  
</**titleStmt**>

### The Edition Statement

The <editionStmt> groups information relating to one edition of the digital resource (where edition is used as elsewhere in bibliography), and may include the following elements:

**edition** describes the particularities of one edition of a text.

**respStmt** (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work.

Example:

<**editionStmt**>  
 <**edition** **n**="U2">Third  
   draft, substantially revised <**date**>1987</**date**>  
 </**edition**>  
</**editionStmt**>

Determining exactly what constitutes a new edition of an electronic text is left to the encoder.

### The Extent Statement

The <extent> statement describes the approximate size of the digital resource.

Example:

<**extent**>4532  
 bytes</**extent**>

### The Publication Statement

The <publicationStmt> is mandatory. It may contain a simple prose description or groups of the elements described below:

**publisher** provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

**distributor** supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text.

**authority** (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making a work available, other than a publisher or distributor.

At least one of these three elements must be present, unless the entire publication statement is in prose. The following elements may occur within them:

**pubPlace** (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

**address** contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual.

**idno** (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way.

**availability** supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc.

**licence** contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text.

**date** contains a date in any format.

Example:

<**publicationStmt**>  
 <**publisher**>University of Victoria Humanities Computing and Media Centre</**publisher**>  
 <**pubPlace**>Victoria, BC</**pubPlace**>  
 <**date**>2011</**date**>  
 <**availability** **status**="restricted">  
  <**licence** **target**="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/"> Distributed under a  
     Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported License </**licence**>  
 </**availability**>  
</**publicationStmt**>

### Series and Notes Statements

The <seriesStmt> element groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. It may contain <title>, <idno>, or <respStmt> elements.

The <notesStmt>, if used, contains one or more <note> elements which contain a note or annotation. Some information found in the notes area in conventional bibliography has been assigned specific elements in the TEI scheme.

### The Source Description

The <sourceDesc> is a mandatory element which records details of the source or sources from which the computer file is derived. It may contain simple prose or a bibliographic citation, using one or more of the following elements:

**bibl** (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

**listBibl** (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.

Examples:

<**sourceDesc**>  
 <**bibl**>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile,  
   1968)</**bibl**>  
</**sourceDesc**>

<**sourceDesc**>  
 <**bibl**>  
  <**author**>CNN Network News</**author**>  
  <**title**>News headlines</**title**>  
  <**date**>12 Jun  
     1989</**date**>  
 </**bibl**>  
</**sourceDesc**>

## The Encoding Description

The <encodingDesc> element specifies the methods and editorial principles which governed the transcription of the text. Its use is highly recommended. It may be prose description or may contain elements from the following list:

**projectDesc** (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected.

**samplingDecl** (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection.

**editorialDecl** (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text.

**refsDecl** (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text.

**classDecl** (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text.

### Project and Sampling Descriptions

Examples of <projectDesc> and <samplingDesc>:

<**encodingDesc**>  
 <**projectDesc**>  
  <**p**>Texts collected for  
     use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990.  
  </**p**>  
 </**projectDesc**>  
</**encodingDesc**>

<**encodingDesc**>  
 <**samplingDecl**>  
  <**p**>Samples of  
     2000 words taken from the beginning of the text</**p**>  
 </**samplingDecl**>  
</**encodingDesc**>

### Editorial Declarations

The <editorialDecl> contains a prose description of the practices used when encoding the text. Typically this description should cover such topics as the following, each of which may conveniently be given as a separate paragraph.

**correction**  how and under what circumstances corrections have been made in the text.

**normalization** the extent to which the original source has been regularized or normalized.

**quotation** what has been done with quotation marks in the original -- have they been retained or replaced by entity references, are opening and closing quotes distinguished, etc.

**hyphenation** what has been done with hyphens (especially end-of-line hyphens) in the original -- have they been retained, replaced by entity references, etc.

**segmentation** how has the text has been segmented, for example into sentences, tone-units, graphemic strata, etc.

**interpretation** what analytic or interpretive information has been added to the text.

Example:

<**editorialDecl**>  
 <**p**>The part of  
   speech analysis applied throughout section 4 was added by hand and has not been  
   checked.</**p**>  
 <**p**>Errors in transcription controlled by using the WordPerfect spelling  
   checker.</**p**>  
 <**p**>All words converted to Modern American spelling using Webster's 9th  
   Collegiate dictionary.</**p**>  
</**editorialDecl**>

### Reference and Classification Declarations

The <refsDecl> element is used to document the way in which any standard referencing scheme built into the encoding works. In its simplest form, it consists of prose description.

Example:

<**refsDecl**>  
 <**p**>The <**att**>n</**att**>  
   attribute on each <**gi**>div</**gi**> contains the canonical reference for each division in the  
   form XX.yyy where XX is the book number in roman numeral and yyy is the section number in  
   arabic.</**p**>  
 <**p**>Milestone tags refer to the edition of 1830 as E30 and that of 1850 as E50.  
 </**p**>  
</**refsDecl**>

The <classDecl> element groups together definitions or sources for any descriptive classification schemes used by other parts of the header. At least one such scheme must be provided, encoded using the following elements:

**taxonomy** defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy.

**bibl** (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

**category** contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy.

**catDesc** (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal <textDesc>.

In the simplest case, the taxonomy may be defined by a bibliographic reference, as in the following example:

<**classDecl**>  
 <**taxonomy** **xml:id**="LC-SH">  
  <**bibl**>Library of Congress Subject Headings  
  </**bibl**>  
 </**taxonomy**>  
</**classDecl**>

Alternatively, or in addition, the encoder may define a special purpose classification scheme, as in the following example:

<**taxonomy** **xml:id**="B">  
 <**bibl**>Brown Corpus</**bibl**>  
 <**category** **xml:id**="B.A">  
  <**catDesc**>Press  
     Reportage</**catDesc**>  
  <**category** **xml:id**="B.A1">  
   <**catDesc**>Daily</**catDesc**>  
  </**category**>  
  <**category** **xml:id**="B.A2">  
   <**catDesc**>Sunday</**catDesc**>  
  </**category**>  
  <**category** **xml:id**="B.A3">  
   <**catDesc**>National</**catDesc**>  
  </**category**>  
  <**category** **xml:id**="B.A4">  
   <**catDesc**>Provincial</**catDesc**>  
  </**category**>  
  <**category** **xml:id**="B.A5">  
   <**catDesc**>Political</**catDesc**>  
  </**category**>  
  <**category** **xml:id**="B.A6">  
   <**catDesc**>Sports</**catDesc**>  
  </**category**>  
 </**category**>  
 <**category** **xml:id**="B.D">  
  <**catDesc**>Religion</**catDesc**>  
  <**category** **xml:id**="B.D1">  
   <**catDesc**>Books</**catDesc**>  
  </**category**>  
  <**category** **xml:id**="B.D2">  
   <**catDesc**>Periodicals and  
       tracts</**catDesc**>  
  </**category**>  
 </**category**>  
</**taxonomy**>

Linkage between a particular text and a category within such a taxonomy is made by means of the <catRef> element within the <textClass> element, as described in the next section below.

## The Profile Description

The <profileDesc> element enables information characterizing various descriptive aspects of a text to be recorded within a single framework. It has three optional components:

**creation** contains information about the creation of a text.

**langUsage** (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text.

**textClass** (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc.

The <creation> element is useful for documenting where a work was created, even though it may not have been published or recorded there.

Example:

<**creation**>  
 <**date** **when**="1992-08">August 1992</**date**>  
 <**name** **type**="place">Taos, New Mexico</**name**>  
</**creation**>

The <langUsage> element is useful where a text contains many different languages. It may contain <language> elements to document each particular language used:

**language** characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text.

For example, a text containing predominantly text in French as spoken in Quebec, but also smaller amounts of British and Canadian English might be documented as follows:

<**langUsage**>  
 <**language** **ident**="fr-CA" **usage**="60">Québecois</**language**>  
 <**language** **ident**="en-CA" **usage**="20">Canadian business English</**language**>  
 <**language** **ident**="en-GB" **usage**="20">British English</**language**>  
</**langUsage**>

The <textClass> element classifies a text. This may be done with reference to a classification system locally defined by means of the <classDecl> element, or by reference to some externally defined established scheme such as the Universal Decimal Classification. Texts may also be classified using lists of keywords, which may themselves be drawn from locally or externally defined control lists. The following elements are used to supply such classifications:

**classCode** (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system.

**catRef** (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology.

**keywords** contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text.

The simplest way of classifying a text is by means of the <classCode> element. For example, a text with classification 410 in the Universal Decimal Classification might be documented as follows:

<**classCode** **scheme**="http://www.udc.org">410</**classCode**>

When a classification scheme has been locally defined using the <taxonomy> element discussed in the preceding subsection, the <catRef> element should be used to reference it. To continue the earlier example, a work classified in the Brown Corpus as Press reportage - Sunday and also as Religion might be documented as follows:

<**catRef** **target**="#B.A3 #B.D"/>

The element <keywords> contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. As usual, the attribute *@scheme* identifies the source from which these terms are taken. For example, if the LC Subject Headings are used, following declaration of that classification system in a <taxonomy> element as above :

<**textClass**>  
 <**keywords** **scheme**="#LCSH">  
  <**list**>  
   <**item**>English literature -- History and criticism -- Data processing.</**item**>  
   <**item**>English literature -- History and criticism -- Theory etc.</**item**>  
   <**item**>English language -- Style -- Data processing.</**item**>  
  </**list**>  
 </**keywords**>  
</**textClass**>

Multiple classifications may be supplied using any of the mechanisms described in this section.

## The Revision Description

The <revisionDesc> element provides a change log in which each change made to a text may be recorded. The log may be recorded as a sequence of <change> elements each of which contains a brief description of the change. The attributes *@when* and *@who* may be used to identify when the change was carried out and the agency responsible for it.

Example:

<**revisionDesc**>  
 <**change** **when**="1991-03-06" **who**="#EMB">File format updated</**change**>  
 <**change** **when**="1990-05-25" **who**="#EMB">Stuart's corrections entered</**change**>  
</**revisionDesc**>

In a production environment it will usually be found preferable to use some kind of automated system to track and record changes. Many such version control systems, as they are known, can also be configured to update the TEI Header of a file automatically.

1. List of Elements Described

The TEI Lite schema is a pure subset of TEI P5. In the following list of elements and classes used, some information, notably the examples, derives from the canonical definition for the element in TEI P5 and may therefore refer to elements or attributes not provided by TEI Lite. Note however that only the elements listed here are available within the TEI Lite schema. These specifications also refer to many attributes which although available in TEI Lite are not discussed in this tutorial for lack of space.

* 1. Elements
     1. <TEI>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<TEI>** (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the model.resource class. Multiple <TEI> elements may be combined within a <TEI> (or <teiCorpus>) element. [[4. Default Text Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS) [15.1. Varieties of Composite Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.describedResource |
| **Contained by** | **core:** teiCorpus  **textstructure:** TEI |
| **May contain** | **header:** teiHeader  **textstructure:** TEI text |
| **Note** | This element is required. It is customary to specify the TEI namespace http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0 on it, using the *@xmlns* attribute. |
| **Example** | <**TEI** **version**="3.3.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  <**teiHeader**>   <**fileDesc**>    <**titleStmt**>     <**title**>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</**title**>    </**titleStmt**>    <**publicationStmt**>     <**p**>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5          version using a name space.</**p**>    </**publicationStmt**>    <**sourceDesc**>     <**p**>No source: this is an original work.</**p**>    </**sourceDesc**>   </**fileDesc**>  </**teiHeader**>  <**text**>   <**body**>    <**p**>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</**p**>   </**body**>  </**text**> </**TEI**> |
| **Example** | <**TEI** **version**="2.9.1" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  <**teiHeader**>   <**fileDesc**>    <**titleStmt**>     <**title**>A TEI Document containing four page images </**title**>    </**titleStmt**>    <**publicationStmt**>     <**p**>Unpublished demonstration file.</**p**>    </**publicationStmt**>    <**sourceDesc**>     <**p**>No source: this is an original work.</**p**>    </**sourceDesc**>   </**fileDesc**>  </**teiHeader**>  <**facsimile**>   <**graphic** **url**="page1.png"/>   <**graphic** **url**="page2.png"/>   <**graphic** **url**="page3.png"/>   <**graphic** **url**="page4.png"/>  </**facsimile**> </**TEI**> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:ns prefix="tei"  uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/> <sch:ns prefix="xs"  uri="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"/> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:ns prefix="rng"  uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">   <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">    <sequence maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">     <classRef key="model.resource"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>     <elementRef key="TEI"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>    </sequence>    <elementRef key="TEI"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element TEI {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  ( [teiHeader](#TEI.teiHeader), ( ( [model.resource](#TEI.model.resource)+, [TEI](#TEI.TEI)\* ) | [TEI](#TEI.TEI)+ ) ) } |

* + 1. <abbr>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<abbr>** (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort. [[3.5.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAB)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | allows the encoder to classify the abbreviation according to some convenient typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **suspension** the abbreviation provides the first letter(s) of the word or phrase, omitting the remainder.  **contraction** the abbreviation omits some letter(s) in the middle.  **brevigraph** the abbreviation comprises a special symbol or mark.  **superscription** the abbreviation includes writing above the line.  **acronym** the abbreviation comprises the initial letters of the words of a phrase.  **title** the abbreviation is for a title of address (Dr, Ms, Mr, …)  **organization** the abbreviation is for the name of an organization.  **geographic** the abbreviation is for a geographic name. | | **Note** | The *@type* attribute is provided for the sake of those who wish to classify abbreviations at their point of occurrence; this may be useful in some circumstances, though usually the same abbreviation will have the same type in all occurrences. As the sample values make clear, abbreviations may be classified by the method used to construct them, the method of writing them, or the referent of the term abbreviated; the typology used is up to the encoder and should be carefully planned to meet the needs of the expected use. For a typology of Middle English abbreviations, see <#PETTY> | | |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | If abbreviations are expanded silently, this practice should be documented in the <editorialDecl>, either with a <normalization> element or a <p>. |
| **Example** | <**choice**>  <**expan**>North Atlantic Treaty Organization</**expan**>  <**abbr** **cert**="low">NorATO</**abbr**>  <**abbr** **cert**="high">NATO</**abbr**>  <**abbr** **cert**="high" **xml:lang**="fr">OTAN</**abbr**> </**choice**> |
| **Example** | <**choice**>  <**abbr**>SPQR</**abbr**>  <**expan**>senatus populusque romanorum</**expan**> </**choice**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element abbr {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <add>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<add>** (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [[3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDADD)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.transcriptional (@status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)) (att.written (@hand)) att.placement (@place) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change distributor edition extent licence  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | In a diplomatic edition attempting to represent an original source, the <add> element should not be used for additions to the current TEI electronic edition made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> or <supplied> element are recommended.  In a TEI edition of a historical text with previous editorial emendations in which such additions or reconstructions are considered part of the source text, the use of <add> may be appropriate, dependent on the editorial philosophy of the project. |
| **Example** | The story I am  going to relate is true as to its main facts, and as to the  consequences <**add** **place**="above">of these facts</**add**> from which  this tale takes its title. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element add {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.transcriptional.attributes](#TEI.att.transcriptional),  [att.placement.attributes](#TEI.att.placement),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.att.dimensions),  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |

* + 1. <addName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<addName>** (additional name) contains an additional name component, such as a nickname, epithet, or alias, or any other descriptive phrase used within a personal name. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>Frederick</**forename**>  <**addName** **type**="epithet">the Great</**addName**>  <**roleName**>Emperor of Prussia</**roleName**> </**persName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element addName {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.personal.attributes](#TEI.att.personal),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <addrLine>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<addrLine>** (address line) contains one line of a postal address. [[3.5.2. Addresses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.addrPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the model.addrPart class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an <address> element directly but may be wrapped within an <addrLine> if they form part of the printed address in some source text. |
| **Example** | <**address**>  <**addrLine**>Computing Center, MC 135</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>P.O. Box 6998</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>Chicago, IL</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>60680 USA</**addrLine**> </**address**> |
| **Example** | <**addrLine**>  <**ref** **target**="tel:+1-201-555-0123">(201) 555 0123</**ref**> </**addrLine**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element addrLine { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq) } |

* + 1. <address>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<address>** contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. [[3.5.2. Addresses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.addressLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal publicationStmt sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** addrLine gap index lb milestone name note pb rs  **figures:** figure  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link  **namesdates:** addName bloc climate country district forename genName geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait |
| **Note** | This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element <addrLine> may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from the model.addrPart class, such as <street>, <postCode> etc. |
| **Example** | Using just the elements defined by the core module, an address could be represented as follows:  <**address**>  <**street**>via Marsala 24</**street**>  <**postCode**>40126</**postCode**>  <**name**>Bologna</**name**>  <**name**>Italy</**name**> </**address**> |
| **Example** | When a schema includes the names and dates module more specific elements such as country or settlement would be preferable over generic <name>:  <**address**>  <**street**>via Marsala 24</**street**>  <**postCode**>40126</**postCode**>  <**settlement**>Bologna</**settlement**>  <**country**>Italy</**country**> </**address**> |
| **Example** | <**address**>  <**addrLine**>Computing Center, MC 135</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>P.O. Box 6998</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>Chicago, IL 60680</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>USA</**addrLine**> </**address**> |
| **Example** | <**address**>  <**country** **key**="FR"/>  <**settlement** **type**="city">Lyon</**settlement**>  <**postCode**>69002</**postCode**>  <**district** **type**="arrondissement">IIème</**district**>  <**district** **type**="quartier">Perrache</**district**>  <**street**>   <**num**>30</**num**>, Cours de Verdun</**street**> </**address**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.global"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.addrPart"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element address {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*, ( [model.addrPart](#TEI.model.addrPart), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+ ) } |

* + 1. <affiliation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<affiliation>** contains an informal description of a person's present or past affiliation with some organization, for example an employer or sponsor. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **sponsor**  **recommend**  **discredit**  **pledged** | | |
| **Member of** | model.addressLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | If included, the name of an organization may be tagged using either the <name> element as above, or the more specific <orgName> element. |
| **Example** | <**affiliation**>Junior project officer for the US <**name** **type**="org">National Endowment for    the Humanities</**name**> </**affiliation**> |
| **Example** | This example indicates that the person was affiliated with the Australian Journalists Association at some point between the dates listed.  <**affiliation** **notAfter**="1960-01-01"  **notBefore**="1957-02-28">Paid up member of the <**orgName**>Australian Journalists Association</**orgName**> </**affiliation**> |
| **Example** | This example indicates that the person was affiliated with Mount Holyoke College throughout the entire span of the date range listed.  <**affiliation** **from**="1902-01-01"  **to**="1906-01-01">Was an assistant professor at Mount Holyoke College.</**affiliation**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element affiliation {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <age>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<age>** specifies the age of a person. [[13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSEpc)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **western**  **sui**  **subjective**  **objective**  **inWorld** (in world) age of a fictional character at the time the story takes place, rather than at the time the story is told  **chronological**  **biological**  **psychological**  **functional** | | | **value** | supplies a numeric code representing the age or age group   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.count | | **Note** | This attribute may be used to complement a more detailed discussion of a person's age in the content of the element | | |
| **Contained by** | — |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **figures:** figure  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | As with other culturally-constructed traits such as sex, the way in which this concept is described in different cultural contexts may vary. The normalizing attributes are provided as a means of simplifying that variety to Western European norms and should not be used where that is inappropriate. The content of the element may be used to describe the intended concept in more detail, using plain text. |
| **Example** | <**age** **notAfter**="1986" **value**="2">under 20 in the early eighties</**age**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element age {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.att.dimensions),  attribute type { text }?,  attribute value { text }?,  [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

* + 1. <anchor>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<anchor>** (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element. [[8.4.2. Synchronization and Overlap](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSSAPA) [16.5. Correspondence and Alignment](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SACS)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.milestoneLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list listBibl mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figure table  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName person personGrp persona placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | On this element, the global *@xml:id* attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for the point at which this element occurs within a document. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence. |
| **Example** | <**s**>The anchor is he<**anchor** **xml:id**="A234"/>re somewhere.</**s**> <**s**>Help me find it.<**ptr** **target**="#A234"/> </**s**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <empty/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element anchor { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed), empty } |

* + 1. <argument>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<argument>** contains a formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text. [[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB) [4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **figures:** figure table  **textstructure:** back body div front group opener titlePage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** bibl cit desc gap head index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage  **figures:** figure table  **linking:** anchor link  **namesdates:** listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation  **tagdocs:** eg |
| **Example** | <**argument**>  <**p**>Monte Video — Maldonado — Excursion    to R Polanco — Lazo and Bolas — Partridges —    Absence of Trees — Deer — Capybara, or River Hog —    Tucutuco — Molothrus, cuckoo-like habits — Tyrant    Flycatcher — Mocking-bird — Carrion Hawks —    Tubes formed by Lightning — House struck</**p**> </**argument**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.global"/>    <classRef key="model.headLike"/>   </alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.common"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element argument {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  ( ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike) )\*, ( [model.common](#TEI.model.common), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+ ) } |

* + 1. <att>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<att>** (attribute) contains the name of an attribute appearing within running text. [[22. Documentation Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TD)] | |
| **Module** | tagdocs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **scheme** | supplies an identifier for the scheme in which this name is defined.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **TEI** (Text Encoding Initiative) this attribute is part of the TEI scheme. [Default]  **DBK** (Docbook) this attribute is part of the Docbook scheme.  **XX** (unknown) this attribute is part of an unknown scheme.  **imaginary** the attribute is from a non-existent scheme, for illustrative purposes only  **XHTML** the attribute is part of the XHTML language  **XML** the attribute is part of the XML language  **XI** the attribute is defined in the xInclude schema | | |
| **Member of** | model.phrase.xml |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | As an alternative to using the *@scheme* attribute a namespace prefix may be used. Where both *@scheme* and a prefix are used, the prefix takes precedence. |
| **Example** | <**p**>The TEI defines several <**soCalled**>global</**soCalled**> attributes; their names include <**att**>xml:id</**att**>, <**att**>rend</**att**>, <**att**>xml:lang</**att**>, <**att**>n</**att**>, <**att**>xml:space</**att**>,  and <**att**>xml:base</**att**>; <**att** **scheme**="XX">type</**att**> is not amongst them.</**p**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef key="teidata.name"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element att { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), attribute scheme { text }?, [teidata.name](#TEI.teidata.name) } |

* + 1. <author>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<author>** in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority. [[3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **header:** editionStmt titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes *@key* or *@ref* may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource.  In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast.  Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as Unknown or Anonymous. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given. |
| **Example** | <**author**>British Broadcasting Corporation</**author**> <**author**>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de (1634–1693)</**author**> <**author**>Anonymous</**author**> <**author**>Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation</**author**> <**author**>  <**persName**>Beaumont, Francis</**persName**> and <**persName**>John Fletcher</**persName**> </**author**> <**author**>  <**orgName** **key**="BBC">British Broadcasting    Corporation</**orgName**>: Radio 3 Network </**author**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element author {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <authority>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<authority>** (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making a work available, other than a publisher or distributor. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.publicationStmtPart.agency |
| **Contained by** | **header:** publicationStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **figures:** figure  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**authority**>John Smith</**authority**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element authority {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

* + 1. <availability>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<availability>** supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **status** | supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **free** the text is freely available.  **unknown** the status of the text is unknown.  **restricted** the text is not freely available. | | |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **header:** publicationStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **header:** licence |
| **Note** | A consistent format should be adopted |
| **Example** | <**availability** **status**="restricted">  <**p**>Available for academic research purposes only.</**p**> </**availability**> <**availability** **status**="free">  <**p**>In the public domain</**p**> </**availability**> <**availability** **status**="restricted">  <**p**>Available under licence from the publishers.</**p**> </**availability**> |
| **Example** | <**availability**>  <**licence** **target**="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT">   <**p**>The MIT License      applies to this document.</**p**>   <**p**>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria</**p**>   <**p**>Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy      of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal      in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights      to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell      copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is      furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:</**p**>   <**p**>The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in      all copies or substantial portions of the Software.</**p**>   <**p**>THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR      IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY,      FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE      AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER      LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM,      OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN      THE SOFTWARE.</**p**>  </**licence**> </**availability**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="1">   <classRef key="model.availabilityPart"/>   <classRef key="model.pLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element availability {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" }?,  ( [model.availabilityPart](#TEI.model.availabilityPart) | [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike) )+ } |

* + 1. <back>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<back>** (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text. [[4.7. Back Matter](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSBACK) [4. Default Text Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** text |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** divGen gap head index lb list listBibl milestone note p pb  **figures:** figure table  **linking:** anchor link  **namesdates:** listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation  **textstructure:** argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph postscript signed titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **Note** | Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as back matter and which as front matter, the content models for the <back> and <front> elements are identical. |
| **Example** | <**back**>  <**div** **type**="appendix">   <**head**>The Golden Dream or, the Ingenuous Confession</**head**>   <**p**>TO shew the Depravity of human Nature, and how apt the Mind is to be misled by Trinkets      and false Appearances, Mrs. Two-Shoes does acknowledge, that after she became rich, she      had like to have been, too fond of Money  <!-- .... -->   </**p**>  </**div**> <!-- ... -->  <**div** **type**="epistle">   <**head**>A letter from the Printer, which he desires may be inserted</**head**>   <**salute**>Sir.</**salute**>   <**p**>I have done with your Copy, so you may return it to the Vatican, if you please;    <!-- ... -->   </**p**>  </**div**>  <**div** **type**="advert">   <**head**>The Books usually read by the Scholars of Mrs Two-Shoes are these and are sold at Mr      Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in St Paul's Church-yard.</**head**>   <**list**>    <**item** **n**="1">The Christmas Box, Price 1d.</**item**>    <**item** **n**="2">The History of Giles Gingerbread, 1d.</**item**> <!-- ... -->    <**item** **n**="42">A Curious Collection of Travels, selected from the Writers of all Nations,        10 Vol, Pr. bound 1l.</**item**>   </**list**>  </**div**>  <**div** **type**="advert">   <**head**>By the KING's Royal Patent, Are sold by J. NEWBERY, at the Bible and Sun in St.      Paul's Church-Yard.</**head**>   <**list**>    <**item** **n**="1">Dr. James's Powders for Fevers, the Small-Pox, Measles, Colds, &amp;c. 2s.        6d</**item**>    <**item** **n**="2">Dr. Hooper's Female Pills, 1s.</**item**> <!-- ... -->   </**list**>  </**div**> </**back**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>    <classRef key="model.pLike.front"/>    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>    <classRef key="model.listLike"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>   <alternate minOccurs="0">    <sequence>     <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>      <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>      <classRef key="model.global"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <sequence>     <classRef key="model.divLike"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>      <classRef key="model.divLike"/>      <classRef key="model.global"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>   </alternate>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>     <classRef key="model.global"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element back {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  (  (  [model.frontPart](#TEI.model.frontPart) | [model.pLike.front](#TEI.model.pLike.front) | [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike) | [model.listLike](#TEI.model.listLike) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*,  (  (  [model.div1Like](#TEI.model.div1Like),  ( [model.frontPart](#TEI.model.frontPart) | [model.div1Like](#TEI.model.div1Like) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*  )  | ( [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike), ( [model.frontPart](#TEI.model.frontPart) | [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* )  )?,  ( [model.divBottomPart](#TEI.model.divBottomPart), ( [model.divBottomPart](#TEI.model.divBottomPart) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* )?  ) } |

* + 1. <bibl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<bibl>** (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [[3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBITY) [2.2.7. The Source Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.docStatus (@status) |
| **Member of** | model.biblLike model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add bibl cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl note orig p q ref reg relatedItem sic stage title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change licence sourceDesc taxonomy  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** climate event location object occupation org place population state terrain trait  **textstructure:** argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr pubPlace publisher ref reg relatedItem respStmt rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure  **header:** availability distributor edition extent funder idno principal sponsor  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listRelation location nameLink objectIdentifier objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** code ident  character data |
| **Note** | Contains phrase-level elements, together with any combination of elements from the model.biblPart class |
| **Example** | <**bibl**>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale,  1990)</**bibl**> |
| **Example** | <**bibl**>  <**title** **level**="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</**title**>. In <**author**>Victor E Neuberg</**author**>, <**title**>The Penny Histories</**title**>. <**publisher**>OUP</**publisher**>  <**date**>1968</**date**>.  </**bibl**> |
| **Example** | <**bibl** **subtype**="book\_chapter" **type**="article"  **xml:id**="carlin\_2003">  <**author**>   <**name**>    <**surname**>Carlin</**surname**>      (<**forename**>Claire</**forename**>)</**name**>  </**author**>, <**title** **level**="a">The Staging of Impotence : France’s last    congrès</**title**> dans <**bibl** **type**="monogr">   <**title** **level**="m">Theatrum mundi : studies in honor of Ronald W.      Tobin</**title**>, éd.  <**editor**>    <**name**>     <**forename**>Claire</**forename**>     <**surname**>Carlin</**surname**>    </**name**>   </**editor**> et  <**editor**>    <**name**>     <**forename**>Kathleen</**forename**>     <**surname**>Wine</**surname**>    </**name**>   </**editor**>,  <**pubPlace**>Charlottesville, Va.</**pubPlace**>,  <**publisher**>Rookwood Press</**publisher**>,  <**date** **when**="2003">2003</**date**>.  </**bibl**> </**bibl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.highlighted"/>   <classRef key="model.pPart.data"/>   <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>   <classRef key="model.segLike"/>   <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>   <classRef key="model.biblPart"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element bibl {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  [att.docStatus.attributes](#TEI.att.docStatus),  (  text  | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.highlighted](#TEI.model.highlighted) | [model.pPart.data](#TEI.model.pPart.data) | [model.pPart.edit](#TEI.model.pPart.edit) | [model.segLike](#TEI.model.segLike) | [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) | [model.biblPart](#TEI.model.biblPart) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |

* + 1. <biblScope>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<biblScope>** (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work. [[3.11.2.5. Scopes and Ranges in Bibliographic Citations](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOB)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.citing (@unit, @from, @to) |
| **Member of** | model.imprintPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **header:** seriesStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | When a single page is being cited, use the *@from* and *@to* attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is provided, the *@from* attribute may be used without *@to*; for example a citation such as ‘p. 3ff’ might be encoded <biblScope from="3">p. 3ff<biblScope>.  It is now considered good practice to supply this element as a sibling (rather than a child) of <imprint>, since it supplies information which does not constitute part of the imprint. |
| **Example** | <**biblScope**>pp 12–34</**biblScope**> <**biblScope** **from**="12" **to**="34" **unit**="page"/> <**biblScope** **unit**="volume">II</**biblScope**> <**biblScope** **unit**="page">12</**biblScope**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element biblScope {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.citing.attributes](#TEI.att.citing),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <birth>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<birth>** contains information about a person's birth, such as its date and place. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **caesarean** (caesarean section)  **vaginal** (vaginal delivery)  **exNihilo** (ex nihilo)  **incorporated**  **founded**  **established** | | |
| **Contained by** | — |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**birth**>Before 1920, Midlands region.</**birth**> |
| **Example** | <**birth** **when**="1960-12-10">In a small cottage near <**name** **type**="place">Aix-la-Chapelle</**name**>,  early in the morning of <**date**>10 Dec 1960</**date**> </**birth**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element birth {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.att.dimensions),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <bloc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<bloc>** contains the name of a geo-political unit consisting of two or more nation states or countries. [[13.2.3. Place Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**bloc** **type**="union">the European Union</**bloc**> <**bloc** **type**="continent">Africa</**bloc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element bloc {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <body>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<body>** (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [[4. Default Text Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** text |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** bibl cit desc divGen gap head index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage  **figures:** figure table  **linking:** anchor link  **namesdates:** listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute signed trailer |
| **Example** | <**body**>  <**l**>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard</**l**>  <**l**>metudæs maecti end his modgidanc</**l**>  <**l**>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes</**l**>  <**l**>eci dryctin or astelidæ</**l**>  <**l**>he aerist scop aelda barnum</**l**>  <**l**>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</**l**>  <**l**>tha middungeard moncynnæs uard</**l**>  <**l**>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</**l**>  <**l**>firum foldu frea allmectig</**l**>  <**trailer**>primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.</**trailer**> </**body**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.global"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.global"/>     <classRef key="model.divTop"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.global"/>     <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>   <alternate>    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <classRef key="model.divLike"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.global"/>      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.global"/>      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <sequence>     <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="1">      <classRef key="model.common"/>      <classRef key="model.global"       maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>     </sequence>     <alternate minOccurs="0">      <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"       minOccurs="1">       <classRef key="model.divLike"/>       <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"        minOccurs="0">        <classRef key="model.global"/>        <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>       </alternate>      </sequence>      <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"       minOccurs="1">       <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>       <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"        minOccurs="0">        <classRef key="model.global"/>        <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>       </alternate>      </sequence>     </alternate>    </sequence>   </alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element body {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  (  [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*,  ( [model.divTop](#TEI.model.divTop), ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.divTop](#TEI.model.divTop) )\* )?,  ( [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike), ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike) )\* )?,  (  ( [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike), ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike) )\* )+  | ( [model.div1Like](#TEI.model.div1Like), ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike) )\* )+  | (  ( [model.common](#TEI.model.common), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+,  (  ( [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike), ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike) )\* )+  | ( [model.div1Like](#TEI.model.div1Like), ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike) )\* )+  )?  )  ),  ( [model.divBottom](#TEI.model.divBottom), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )\*  ) } |

* + 1. <byline>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<byline>** contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work. [[4.2.2. Openers and Closers](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSOC) [4.5. Front Matter](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSFRONT)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **figures:** figure table  **textstructure:** back body div front group opener titlePage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  **textstructure:** docAuthor  character data |
| **Note** | The byline on a title page may include either the name or a description for the document's author. Where the name is included, it may optionally be tagged using the <docAuthor> element. |
| **Example** | <**byline**>Written by a CITIZEN who continued all the  while in London. Never made publick before.</**byline**> |
| **Example** | <**byline**>Written from her own MEMORANDUMS</**byline**> |
| **Example** | <**byline**>By George Jones, Political Editor, in Washington</**byline**> |
| **Example** | <**byline**>BY <**docAuthor**>THOMAS PHILIPOTT,</**docAuthor**>  Master of Arts,  (Somtimes)  Of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.</**byline**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <elementRef key="docAuthor"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element byline {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [docAuthor](#TEI.docAuthor) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |

* + 1. <catDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<catDesc>** (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal <textDesc>. [[2.3.7. The Classification Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD55)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** category |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gloss hi mentioned name num ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **header:** idno  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**catDesc**>Prose reportage</**catDesc**> |
| **Example** | <**catDesc**>  <**textDesc** **n**="novel">   <**channel** **mode**="w">print; part issues</**channel**>   <**constitution** **type**="single"/>   <**derivation** **type**="original"/>   <**domain** **type**="art"/>   <**factuality** **type**="fiction"/>   <**interaction** **type**="none"/>   <**preparedness** **type**="prepared"/>   <**purpose** **degree**="high" **type**="entertain"/>   <**purpose** **degree**="medium" **type**="inform"/>  </**textDesc**> </**catDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>   <classRef key="model.catDescPart"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element catDesc {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  ( text | [model.limitedPhrase](#TEI.model.limitedPhrase) | [model.catDescPart](#TEI.model.catDescPart) )\* } |

* + 1. <catRef>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<catRef>** (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology. [[2.4.3. The Text Classification](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD43)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **scheme** | identifies the classification scheme within which the set of categories concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** textClass |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | The *@scheme* attribute needs to be supplied only if more than one taxonomy has been declared. |
| **Example** | <**catRef** **scheme**="#myTopics"  **target**="#news #prov #sales2"/> <!-- elsewhere --> <**taxonomy** **xml:id**="myTopics">  <**category** **xml:id**="news">   <**catDesc**>Newspapers</**catDesc**>  </**category**>  <**category** **xml:id**="prov">   <**catDesc**>Provincial</**catDesc**>  </**category**>  <**category** **xml:id**="sales2">   <**catDesc**>Low to average annual sales</**catDesc**>  </**category**> </**taxonomy**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <empty/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element catRef {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.att.pointing),  attribute scheme { text }?,  empty } |

* + 1. <category>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<category>** contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy. [[2.3.7. The Classification Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD55)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** category taxonomy |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc gloss  **header:** catDesc category |
| **Example** | <**category** **xml:id**="b1">  <**catDesc**>Prose reportage</**catDesc**> </**category**> |
| **Example** | <**category** **xml:id**="b2">  <**catDesc**>Prose </**catDesc**>  <**category** **xml:id**="b11">   <**catDesc**>journalism</**catDesc**>  </**category**>  <**category** **xml:id**="b12">   <**catDesc**>fiction</**catDesc**>  </**category**> </**category**> |
| **Example** | <**category** **xml:id**="LIT">  <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="pl">literatura piękna</**catDesc**>  <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="en">fiction</**catDesc**>  <**category** **xml:id**="LPROSE">   <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="pl">proza</**catDesc**>   <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="en">prose</**catDesc**>  </**category**>  <**category** **xml:id**="LPOETRY">   <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="pl">poezja</**catDesc**>   <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="en">poetry</**catDesc**>  </**category**>  <**category** **xml:id**="LDRAMA">   <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="pl">dramat</**catDesc**>   <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="en">drama</**catDesc**>  </**category**> </**category**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate>    <elementRef key="catDesc"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.descLike"/>     <classRef key="model.glossLike"/>    </alternate>   </alternate>   <elementRef key="category"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element category {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  ( ( [catDesc](#TEI.catDesc)+ | ( [model.descLike](#TEI.model.descLike) | [model.glossLike](#TEI.model.glossLike) )\* ), [category](#TEI.category)\* ) } |

* + 1. <cell>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<cell>** contains one cell of a table. [[14.1.1. TEI Tables](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FT.html#FTTAB1)] | |
| **Module** | figures |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.tableDecoration (@role, @rows, @cols) |
| **Contained by** | **figures:** row |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**row**>  <**cell** **role**="label">General conduct</**cell**>  <**cell** **role**="data">Not satisfactory, on account of his great unpunctuality    and inattention to duties</**cell**> </**row**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element cell {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.tableDecoration.attributes](#TEI.att.tableDecoration),  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |

* + 1. <certainty>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<certainty>** indicates the degree of certainty associated with some aspect of the text markup. [[21.1.2. Structured Indications of Uncertainty](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CE.html#CECECE)] | |
| **Module** | certainty |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.scoping (@target, @match) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend) att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.responsibility (cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **cert** | (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the object pointed to by the <certainty> element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.global.responsibility | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.certainty | | | **locus** | indicates more exactly the aspect concerning which certainty is being expressed: specifically, whether the markup is correctly located, whether the correct element or attribute name has been used, or whether the content of the element or attribute is correct, etc.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **name** uncertainty concerns whether the name of the element or attribute used is correctly applied.  **start** uncertainty concerns whether the start of the element is correctly identified.  **end** uncertainty concerns whether the end of the element is correctly identified.  **location** uncertainty concerns both the start and the end of the element.  **value** uncertainty concerns the content (for an element) or the value (for an attribute) | | | **assertedValue** | provides an alternative value for the aspect of the markup in question—an alternative generic identifier, transcription, or attribute value, or the identifier of an <anchor> element (to indicate an alternative starting or ending location). If an *@assertedValue* is given, the confidence level specified by *@degree* applies to the alternative markup specified by *@assertedValue*; if none is given, it applies to the markup in the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | teidata.word | | <**certainty** **assertedValue**="placeName"  **cert**="low"  **locus**="name"  **target**="#ESX">  <**desc**>It is unlikely, but possible, that this refers to the place    rather than the person.</**desc**> </**certainty**> | | | **Note** | This attribute makes it possible to indicate the degree of confidence in a specific alternative to some aspect of the markup. In the first example above the encoder is expressing the likelihood (.2) that the generic identifier should be <placeName> rather than <persName>, which is the coded element. | | | **given** | indicates one or more element(s) characterizing the conditions which are assumed in the assignment of a degree of confidence.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | **Note** | The envisioned typical value of this attribute would be the identifier of another <certainty> element or a list of such identifiers. It may thus be possible to construct probability networks by chaining <certainty> elements together. Such networks would ultimately be grounded in unconditional <certainty> elements (with no value for *@given*). The semantics of this chaining would be understood in this way: if a <certainty> element is specified, via a reference, as the assumption, then it is not the attribution of uncertainty that is the assumption, but rather the assertion itself. For instance, in the example above, the first <certainty> element indicates that the confidence in the identification of the new scribe as msm. The second indicates the degree of confidence that Essex is a personal name, given that the new scribe is msm. Note that the given in the second <certainty> element is not the assertion that the likelihood that msm is the new scribe is 0.6, but simply the assertion that msm is the new scribe; this is a recommended convention to facilitate building networks.  The ambitious encoder may wish to attempt complex networks or probability assertions, experimenting with references to other elements or prose assertions, and deploying feature structure connectives such as <alt>, <join>, and <note>. However, we do not believe that the <certainty> element gives, at this time, a comprehensive ambiguity-free system for indicating certainty. | | | **degree** | indicates the degree of confidence assigned to the aspect of the markup named by the *@locus* attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.probability | | |
| **Member of** | model.certLike model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** interp s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expan foreign gap gloss head hi item l label lg list mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figure table  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp persona placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** desc |
| **Example** | (For discussion of this example, see section <#CEconcon>)  Ernest went to <**anchor** **xml:id**="A1"/> old <**persName** **xml:id**="SYB">Saybrook</**persName**>.  <**certainty** **degree**="0.6" **locus**="name"  **target**="#SYB" **xml:id**="c1"/> <**certainty** **degree**="0.9" **given**="#c1"  **locus**="start" **target**="#SYB"/> <**certainty** **assertedValue**="persName"  **degree**="0.4" **locus**="name" **target**="#SYB" **xml:id**="C-c2"/> <**certainty** **degree**="0.5" **given**="#C-c2"  **locus**="start" **target**="#SYB"/> <**certainty** **assertedValue**="#a1" **degree**="0.5"  **given**="#c1" **locus**="start" **target**="#SYB"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <classRef key="model.descLike"/>   <classRef key="model.certLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element certainty {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.rendition.attribute.rend](#TEI.att.global.rendition),  [att.global.linking.attribute.corresp](#TEI.att.global.linking),  [att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs](#TEI.att.global.linking),  [att.global.linking.attribute.next](#TEI.att.global.linking),  [att.global.linking.attribute.prev](#TEI.att.global.linking),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.global.facs.attribute.facs](#TEI.att.global.facs),  [att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp](#TEI.att.global.responsibility),  [att.global.source.attribute.source](#TEI.att.global.source),  [att.scoping.attributes](#TEI.att.scoping),  attribute cert { text }?,  attribute locus { "name" | "start" | "end" | "location" | "value" },  attribute assertedValue { text }?,  attribute given { list { + } }?,  attribute degree { text }?,  ( [model.descLike](#TEI.model.descLike) | [model.certLike](#TEI.model.certLike) )\* } |

* + 1. <change>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<change>** documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file. [[2.6. The Revision Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6) [2.4.1. Creation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4C) [11.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PH-changes)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.ascribed (@who) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.docStatus (@status) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **target** | points to one or more elements that belong to this change.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** revisionDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | The *@who* attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a <respStmt> or <person> element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it.  It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The *@status* attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change documented. |
| **Example** | <**titleStmt**>  <**title**> ... </**title**>  <**editor** **xml:id**="LDB">Lou Burnard</**editor**>  <**respStmt** **xml:id**="BZ">   <**resp**>copy editing</**resp**>   <**name**>Brett Zamir</**name**>  </**respStmt**> </**titleStmt**> <!-- ... --> <**revisionDesc** **status**="published">  <**change** **status**="public" **when**="2008-02-02"   **who**="#BZ">Finished chapter 23</**change**>  <**change** **status**="draft" **when**="2008-01-02"   **who**="#BZ">Finished chapter 2</**change**>  <**change** **n**="P2.2" **when**="1991-12-21"   **who**="#LDB">Added examples to section 3</**change**>  <**change** **when**="1991-11-11" **who**="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</**change**> </**revisionDesc**> |
| **Example** | <**profileDesc**>  <**creation**>   <**listChange**>    <**change** **xml:id**="DRAFT1">First draft in pencil</**change**>    <**change** **notBefore**="1880-12-09"     **xml:id**="DRAFT2">First revision, mostly        using green ink</**change**>    <**change** **notBefore**="1881-02-13"     **xml:id**="DRAFT3">Final corrections as        supplied to printer.</**change**>   </**listChange**>  </**creation**> </**profileDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element change {  [att.ascribed.attributes](#TEI.att.ascribed),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.docStatus.attributes](#TEI.att.docStatus),  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute target { list { + } }?,  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |

* + 1. <choice>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<choice>** groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text. [[3.4. Simple Editorial Changes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.editorial |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr choice corr expan orig reg sic unclear  **linking:** seg |
| **Note** | Because the children of a <choice> element all represent alternative ways of encoding the same sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive. However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the alternative encodings to be considered as parallel.  Note also that <choice> elements may self-nest.  Where the purpose of an encoding is to record multiple witnesses of a single work, rather than to identify multiple possible encoding decisions at a given point, the <app> element and associated elements discussed in section [12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TC.html#TCAPLL) should be preferred. |
| **Example** | An American encoding of *Gulliver's Travels* which retains the British spelling but also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows.  <**p**>Lastly, That, upon his solemn oath to observe all the above  articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of  meat and drink sufficient for the support of <**choice**>   <**sic**>1724</**sic**>   <**corr**>1728</**corr**>  </**choice**> of our subjects,  with free access to our royal person, and other marks of our <**choice**>   <**orig**>favour</**orig**>   <**reg**>favor</**reg**>  </**choice**>.</**p**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="2">   <classRef key="model.choicePart"/>   <elementRef key="choice"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element choice { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), ( [model.choicePart](#TEI.model.choicePart) | [choice](#TEI.choice) )+ } |

* + 1. <cit>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<cit>** (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example. [[3.3.3. Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ) [4.3.1. Grouped Texts](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSGRP) [9.3.5.1. Examples](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DI.html#DITPEG)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.quoteLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author biblScope cit corr del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change distributor edition extent licence  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** argument body div docAuthor docDate docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** bibl cit gap index lb listBibl milestone note pb ptr q ref  **figures:** figure  **linking:** anchor link  **tagdocs:** eg |
| **Example** | <**cit**>  <**q**>and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such an insupportable smell,    as to bring on disorder of the brain.</**q**>  <**bibl**>Ulloa's South America</**bibl**> </**cit**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="1">   <classRef key="model.qLike"/>   <classRef key="model.egLike"/>   <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>   <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>   <classRef key="model.entryPart"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element cit {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  (  [model.qLike](#TEI.model.qLike) | [model.egLike](#TEI.model.egLike) | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) | [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.entryPart](#TEI.model.entryPart) )+ } |

* + 1. <classCode>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<classCode>** (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system. [[2.4.3. The Text Classification](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD43)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **scheme** | identifies the classification system in use, as defined by, e.g. a <taxonomy> element, or some other resource.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** textClass |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **figures:** figure  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**classCode** **scheme**="http://www.udc.org">410</**classCode**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element classCode {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  attribute scheme { text },  [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

* + 1. <classDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<classDecl>** (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text. [[2.3.7. The Classification Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD55) [2.3. The Encoding Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **header:** taxonomy |
| **Example** | <**classDecl**>  <**taxonomy** **xml:id**="LCSH">   <**bibl**>Library of Congress Subject Headings</**bibl**>  </**taxonomy**> </**classDecl**> <!-- ... --> <**textClass**>  <**keywords** **scheme**="#LCSH">   <**term**>Political science</**term**>   <**term**>United States -- Politics and government —      Revolution, 1775-1783</**term**>  </**keywords**> </**textClass**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <elementRef key="taxonomy"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element classDecl { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [taxonomy](#TEI.taxonomy)+ } |

* + 1. <climate>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<climate>** contains information about the physical climate of a place. [[13.3.4.3. States, Traits, and Events](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDGEOGste)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.placeStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc climate country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **certainty:** precision  **core:** bibl desc head label listBibl note p  **namesdates:** climate |
| **Example** | <**place** **xml:id**="ROMA">  <**placeName**>Rome</**placeName**> <!-- ... -->  <**climate**>   <**ab**>    <**table**>     <**head**>24-hr Average Temperature</**head**>     <**row**>      <**cell**/>      <**cell** **role**="label">Jan</**cell**>      <**cell** **role**="label">Jun</**cell**>      <**cell** **role**="label">Dec</**cell**>     </**row**>     <**row**>      <**cell** **role**="label">°C</**cell**>      <**cell** **role**="data">7.1</**cell**>      <**cell** **role**="data">21.7</**cell**>      <**cell** **role**="data">8.3</**cell**>     </**row**>     <**row**>      <**cell** **role**="label">°F</**cell**>      <**cell** **role**="data">44.8</**cell**>      <**cell** **role**="data">71.1</**cell**>      <**cell** **role**="data">46.9</**cell**>     </**row**>    </**table**>   </**ab**>   <**note**>Taken from <**bibl**>     <**abbr**>GHCN 2 Beta</**abbr**>: The Global Historical Climatology Network,        version 2 beta, 1904 months between 1811 and 1980. <**ptr** **target**="http://www.worldclimate.com/cgi-bin/data.pl?ref=N41E012+1202+0004058G2"/>    </**bibl**>   </**note**>  </**climate**> </**place**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="precision"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.pLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    <classRef key="model.labelLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>   </alternate>   <elementRef key="climate"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element climate {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  (  [precision](#TEI.precision)\*,  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike)+ ),  ( [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) )\*,  [climate](#TEI.climate)\*  ) } |

* + 1. <closer>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<closer>** groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter. [[4.2.2. Openers and Closers](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSOC) [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.divBottomPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **figures:** figure table  **textstructure:** back body div front group postscript |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  **textstructure:** dateline salute signed  character data |
| **Example** | <**div** **type**="letter">  <**p**> perhaps you will favour me with a sight of it when convenient.</**p**>  <**closer**>   <**salute**>I remain, &amp;c. &amp;c.</**salute**>   <**signed**>H. Colburn</**signed**>  </**closer**> </**div**> |
| **Example** | <**div** **type**="chapter">  <**p**> <!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</**p**>  <**closer**>   <**dateline**>    <**name** **type**="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</**name**>    <**date**>1914–1921</**date**>   </**dateline**>  </**closer**> </**div**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <elementRef key="signed"/>   <elementRef key="dateline"/>   <elementRef key="salute"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element closer {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.written.attributes](#TEI.att.written),  (  text  | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [signed](#TEI.signed) | [dateline](#TEI.dateline) | [salute](#TEI.salute) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |

* + 1. <code>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<code>** contains literal code from some formal language such as a programming language. [[22.1.1. Phrase Level Terms](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TDphraseTE)] | |
| **Module** | tagdocs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **lang** | (formal language) a name identifying the formal language in which the code is expressed   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.word | | |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | Character data only |
| **Example** | <**code** **lang**="JAVA"> Size fCheckbox1Size = new Size();  fCheckbox1Size.Height = 500;  fCheckbox1Size.Width = 500;  xCheckbox1.setSize(fCheckbox1Size); </**code**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element code { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), attribute lang { text }?, text } |

* + 1. <corr>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<corr>** (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text. [[3.4.1. Apparent Errors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDCOR)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change distributor edition extent licence  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected, <corr> may be used alone:  I don't know,  Juan. It's so far in the past now — how <**corr**>can we</**corr**> prove  or disprove anyone's theories? |
| **Example** | It is also possible, using the <choice> and <sic> elements, to provide an uncorrected reading:  I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now —  how <**choice**>  <**sic**>we can</**sic**>  <**corr**>can we</**corr**> </**choice**> prove or  disprove anyone's theories? |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element corr {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |

* + 1. <country>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<country>** contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc. [[13.2.3. Place Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | The recommended source for codes to represent coded country names is ISO 3166. |
| **Example** | <**country** **key**="DK">Denmark</**country**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element country {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <creation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<creation>** contains information about the creation of a text. [[2.4.1. Creation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4C) [2.4. The Profile Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gloss hi mentioned name num ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **header:** idno  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | The <creation> element may be used to record details of a text's creation, e.g. the date and place it was composed, if these are of interest.  It may also contain a more structured account of the various stages or revisions associated with the evolution of a text; this should be encoded using the <listChange> element. It should not be confused with the <publicationStmt> element, which records date and place of publication. |
| **Example** | <**creation**>  <**date**>Before 1987</**date**> </**creation**> |
| **Example** | <**creation**>  <**date** **when**="1988-07-10">10 July 1988</**date**> </**creation**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>   <elementRef key="listChange"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element creation {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  ( text | [model.limitedPhrase](#TEI.model.limitedPhrase) | [listChange](#TEI.listChange) )\* } |

* + 1. <date>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<date>** contains a date in any format. [[3.5.4. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) [2.6. The Revision Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6) [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI) [15.2.3. The Setting Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHSE) [13.3.7. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal publicationStmt sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**date** **when**="1980-02">early February 1980</**date**> |
| **Example** | Given on the <**date** **when**="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day  of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic  the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **when**="1990-09">September 1990</**date**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element date {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.att.dimensions),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |

* + 1. <dateline>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<dateline>** contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer. [[4.2.2. Openers and Closers](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSOC)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.divWrapper model.pLike.front |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **figures:** figure table  **textstructure:** back body closer div front group opener |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  **textstructure:** docDate  character data |
| **Example** | <**dateline**>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</**dateline**> |
| **Example** | <**div** **type**="chapter">  <**p**> <!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</**p**>  <**closer**>   <**dateline**>    <**name** **type**="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</**name**>    <**date**>1914–1921</**date**>   </**dateline**>  </**closer**> </**div**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>   <elementRef key="docDate"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element dateline {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [docDate](#TEI.docDate) )\* } |

* + 1. <death>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<death>** contains information about a person's death, such as its date and place. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **proclaimed**  **assumed**  **verified**  **clinical**  **brain**  **natural**  **unnatural**  **fragmentation**  **dissolution** | | **Note** | This attribute is not intended to express the cause of death. | | |
| **Contained by** | — |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**death** **when**="1902-10-01"/> |
| **Example** | <**death** **when**="1960-12-10">Passed away near <**name** **type**="place">Aix-la-Chapelle</**name**>, after suffering from cerebral palsy. </**death**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element death {  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.att.dimensions),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <del>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<del>** (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [[3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDADD)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.transcriptional (@status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)) (att.written (@hand)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change distributor edition extent licence  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The <delSpan> element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions.  The text deleted must be at least partially legible in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it (unless it is restored in a <supplied> tag). Illegible or lost text within a deletion may be marked using the <gap> tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed, or is no longer visible. Attributes on the <gap> element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the <unclear> element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way.  Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read, or whether a deletion was intended may be indicated by use of the <certainty> element (see [21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CE.html#CE)).  There is a clear distinction in the TEI between <del> and <surplus> on the one hand and <gap> or <unclear> on the other. <del> indicates a deletion present in the source being transcribed, which states the author's or a later scribe's intent to cancel or remove text. <surplus> indicates material present in the source being transcribed which should have been so deleted, but which is not in fact. <gap> or <unclear>, by contrast, signal an editor's or encoder's decision to omit something or their inability to read the source text. See sections [11.3.1.7. Text Omitted from or Supplied in the Transcription](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHOM) and [11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHCOMB) for the relationship between these and other related elements used in detailed transcription. |
| **Example** | <**l**>  <**del** **rend**="overtyped">Mein</**del**> Frisch <**del** **rend**="overstrike" **type**="primary">schwebt</**del**>  weht der Wind </**l**> |
| **Example** | <**del** **rend**="overstrike">  <**gap** **quantity**="5" **reason**="illegible"   **unit**="character"/> </**del**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element del {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.transcriptional.attributes](#TEI.att.transcriptional),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.att.dimensions),  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |

* + 1. <desc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<desc>** (description) contains a brief description of the object documented by its parent element, typically a documentation element or an entity. [[22.4.1. Description of Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TDcrystalsCEdc)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.translatable (@versionDate) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | <**dataSpec** **ident**="teidata.point"  **module**="tei"  **validUntil**="2050-02-25">  <**desc** **type**="deprecationInfo"   **versionDate**="2018-09-14"   **xml:lang**="en">Several standards bodies, including NIST in the USA,    strongly recommend against ending the representation of a number    with a decimal point. So instead of <**q**>3.</**q**> use either <**q**>3</**q**>    or <**q**>3.0</**q**>.</**desc**> <!-- ... --> </**dataSpec**> | | | |
| **Member of** | model.descLike model.labelLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** add corr del desc emph gap graphic head hi item l lg list listBibl note orig p q ref reg sic stage title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** category change licence taxonomy  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** climate event listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location occupation org place population relation state terrain trait  **textstructure:** argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl choice cit date desc emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl mentioned name num ptr q ref rs soCalled stage term time title  **figures:** table  **header:** idno  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | When used in a specification element such as <elementSpec>, TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, begining with an active verb. |
| **Example** | <**desc**>contains a brief description of the purpose and intended use of a documentation element, or a brief characterisation of a parent entity </**desc**> |
| **Schematron** | A <desc> with a *@type* of deprecationInfo should only occur when its parent element is being deprecated. Furthermore, it should always occur in an element that is being deprecated when <desc> is a valid child of that element.  <sch:rule context="tei:desc[ @type eq 'deprecationInfo']"> <sch:assert test="../@validUntil">Information about a deprecation should only be present in a specification element that is being deprecated: that is, only an element that has a @validUntil attribute should have a child <desc type="deprecationInfo">.</sch:assert> </sch:rule> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element desc {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.translatable.attributes](#TEI.att.translatable),  [att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  [macro.limitedContent](#TEI.macro.limitedContent)} |

* + 1. <distributor>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<distributor>** supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **header:** publicationStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**distributor**>Oxford Text Archive</**distributor**> <**distributor**>Redwood and Burn Ltd</**distributor**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element distributor {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <district>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<district>** contains the name of any kind of subdivision of a settlement, such as a parish, ward, or other administrative or geographic unit. [[13.2.3. Place Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**district** **type**="ward">Jericho</**district**>  <**settlement**>Oxford</**settlement**> </**placeName**> |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**district** **type**="area">South Side</**district**>  <**settlement**>Chicago</**settlement**> </**placeName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element district {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <div>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<div>** (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [[4.1. Divisions of the Body](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDIV)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.divLike |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** back body div front |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** bibl cit desc divGen gap head index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage  **figures:** figure table  **linking:** anchor link  **namesdates:** listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute signed trailer |
| **Example** | <**body**>  <**div** **type**="part">   <**head**>Fallacies of Authority</**head**>   <**p**>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object, to repress all      exercise of the reasoning faculty.</**p**>   <**div** **n**="1" **type**="chapter">    <**head**>The Nature of Authority</**head**>    <**p**>With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the greatest        happiness of the greatest number [...]</**p**>    <**div** **n**="1.1" **type**="section">     <**head**>Analysis of Authority</**head**>     <**p**>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to be attached to          authority [...] </**p**>    </**div**>    <**div** **n**="1.2" **type**="section">     <**head**>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</**head**>     <**p**>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when [...] </**p**>    </**div**>   </**div**>  </**div**> </**body**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div. </s:report> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)"> Abstract model violation: p and ab may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div. </s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <alternate>     <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="1">      <alternate>       <classRef key="model.divLike"/>       <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>      </alternate>      <classRef key="model.global"       maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>     </sequence>     <sequence>      <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"       minOccurs="1">       <classRef key="model.common"/>       <classRef key="model.global"        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>      </sequence>      <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"       minOccurs="0">       <alternate>        <classRef key="model.divLike"/>        <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>       </alternate>       <classRef key="model.global"        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>      </sequence>     </sequence>    </alternate>    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>     <classRef key="model.global"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>    </sequence>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element div {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.divLike.attributes](#TEI.att.divLike),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  [att.written.attributes](#TEI.att.written),  (  ( [model.divTop](#TEI.model.divTop) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*,  (  (  ( ( [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike) | [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike) ), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+  | (  ( [model.common](#TEI.model.common), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+,  ( ( [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike) | [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike) ), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )\*  )  ),  ( [model.divBottom](#TEI.model.divBottom), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )\*  )?  ) } |

* + 1. <divGen>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<divGen>** (automatically generated text division) indicates the location at which a textual division generated automatically by a text-processing application is to appear. [[3.8.2. Index Entries](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONOIX)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | specifies what type of generated text division (e.g. index, table of contents, etc.) is to appear.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **index** an index is to be generated and inserted at this point.  **toc** a table of contents  **figlist** a list of figures  **tablist** a list of tables | | **Note** | Valid values are application-dependent; those shown are of obvious utility in document production, but are by no means exhaustive. | | |
| **Member of** | model.divGenLike model.frontPart |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** back body div front |
| **May contain** | **core:** head |
| **Note** | This element is intended primarily for use in document production or manipulation, rather than in the transcription of pre-existing materials; it makes it easier to specify the location of indices, tables of contents, etc., to be generated by text preparation or word processing software. |
| **Example** | One use for this element is to allow document preparation software to generate an index and insert it in the appropriate place in the output. The example below assumes that the *@indexName* attribute on <index> elements in the text has been used to specify index entries for the two generated indexes, named NAMES and THINGS:  <**back**>  <**div1** **type**="backmat">   <**head**>Bibliography</**head**> <!-- ... -->  </**div1**>  <**div1** **type**="backmat">   <**head**>Indices</**head**>   <**divGen** **n**="Index Nominum" **type**="NAMES"/>   <**divGen** **n**="Index Rerum" **type**="THINGS"/>  </**div1**> </**back**> |
| **Example** | Another use for <divGen> is to specify the location of an automatically produced table of contents:  <**front**> <!--<titlePage>...</titlePage>-->  <**divGen** **type**="toc"/>  <**div**>   <**head**>Preface</**head**>   <**p**> ... </**p**>  </**div**> </**front**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.headLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element divGen {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\* } |

* + 1. <docAuthor>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<docAuthor>** (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline). [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **figures:** figure table  **textstructure:** back body byline div front group titlePage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | The document author's name often occurs within a byline, but the <docAuthor> element may be used whether the <byline> element is used or not. It should be used only for the author(s) of the entire document, not for author(s) of any subset or part of it. (Attributions of authorship of a subset or part of the document, for example of a chapter in a textbook or an article in a newspaper, may be encoded with <byline> without <docAuthor>.) |
| **Example** | <**titlePage**>  <**docTitle**>   <**titlePart**>Travels into Several Remote Nations of the World, in Four      Parts.</**titlePart**>  </**docTitle**>  <**byline**> By <**docAuthor**>Lemuel Gulliver</**docAuthor**>, First a Surgeon,    and then a Captain of several Ships</**byline**> </**titlePage**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element docAuthor {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <docDate>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<docDate>** (document date) contains the date of a document, as given on a title page or in a dateline. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **when** | gives the value of the date in standard form, i.e. YYYY-MM-DD.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.w3c | | **Note** | For simple dates, the *@when* attribute should give the Gregorian or proleptic Gregorian date in one of the formats specified in *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*. | | |
| **Member of** | model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **figures:** figure table  **textstructure:** back body dateline div docImprint front group titlePage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | Cf. the general <date> element in the core tag set. This specialized element is provided for convenience in marking and processing the date of the documents, since it is likely to require specialized handling for many applications. It should be used only for the date of the entire document, not for any subset or part of it. |
| **Example** | <**docImprint**>Oxford, Clarendon Press, <**docDate**>1987</**docDate**> </**docImprint**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element docDate {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  attribute when { text }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <docEdition>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<docEdition>** (document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** back front titlePage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | Cf. the <edition> element of bibliographic citation. As usual, the shorter name has been given to the more frequent element. |
| **Example** | <**docEdition**>The Third edition Corrected</**docEdition**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element docEdition { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent) } |

* + 1. <docImprint>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<docImprint>** (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** back front titlePage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr pubPlace publisher ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  **textstructure:** docDate  character data |
| **Note** | Cf. the <imprint> element of bibliographic citations. As with title, author, and editions, the shorter name is reserved for the element likely to be used more often. |
| **Example** | <**docImprint**>Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1987</**docImprint**>  Imprints may be somewhat more complex:  <**docImprint**>  <**pubPlace**>London</**pubPlace**>  Printed for <**name**>E. Nutt</**name**>,  at <**pubPlace**>Royal Exchange</**pubPlace**>; <**name**>J. Roberts</**name**> in <**pubPlace**>wick-Lane</**pubPlace**>; <**name**>A. Dodd</**name**> without <**pubPlace**>Temple-Bar</**pubPlace**>;  and <**name**>J. Graves</**name**> in <**pubPlace**>St. James's-street.</**pubPlace**>  <**date**>1722.</**date**> </**docImprint**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <elementRef key="pubPlace"/>   <elementRef key="docDate"/>   <elementRef key="publisher"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element docImprint {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  (  text  | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [pubPlace](#TEI.pubPlace) | [docDate](#TEI.docDate) | [publisher](#TEI.publisher) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |

* + 1. <docTitle>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<docTitle>** (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** back front titlePage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** gap index lb milestone note pb  **figures:** figure  **linking:** anchor link  **textstructure:** titlePart |
| **Example** | <**docTitle**>  <**titlePart** **type**="main">The DUNCIAD, VARIOURVM.</**titlePart**>  <**titlePart** **type**="sub">WITH THE PROLEGOMENA of SCRIBLERUS.</**titlePart**> </**docTitle**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.global"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <elementRef key="titlePart"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element docTitle {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*, ( [titlePart](#TEI.titlePart), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+ ) } |

* + 1. <edition>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<edition>** describes the particularities of one edition of a text. [[2.2.2. The Edition Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD22)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **header:** editionStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**edition**>First edition <**date**>Oct 1990</**date**> </**edition**> <**edition** **n**="S2">Students' edition</**edition**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element edition { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq) } |

* + 1. <editionStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<editionStmt>** (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text. [[2.2.2. The Edition Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD22) [2.2. The File Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** author editor p respStmt  **header:** edition funder principal sponsor |
| **Example** | <**editionStmt**>  <**edition** **n**="S2">Students' edition</**edition**>  <**respStmt**>   <**resp**>Adapted by </**resp**>   <**name**>Elizabeth Kirk</**name**>  </**respStmt**> </**editionStmt**> |
| **Example** | <**editionStmt**>  <**p**>First edition, <**date**>Michaelmas Term, 1991.</**date**>  </**p**> </**editionStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <sequence>    <elementRef key="edition"/>    <classRef key="model.respLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element editionStmt {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | ( [edition](#TEI.edition), [model.respLike](#TEI.model.respLike)\* ) ) } |

* + 1. <editor>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<editor>** contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [[3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **header:** editionStmt seriesStmt titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | A consistent format should be adopted.  Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names. |
| **Example** | <**editor** **role**="Technical\_Editor">Ron Van den Branden</**editor**> <**editor** **role**="Editor-in-Chief">John Walsh</**editor**> <**editor** **role**="Managing\_Editor">Anne Baillot</**editor**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element editor {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <editorialDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<editorialDecl>** (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text. [[2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD53) [2.3. The Encoding Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p |
| **Example** | <**editorialDecl**>  <**p**>All words converted to Modern American spelling using    Websters 9th Collegiate dictionary</**p**>  <**p**>All opening quotation marks converted to “ all closing    quotation marks converted to &amp;cdq;.</**p**> </**editorialDecl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="1">   <classRef key="model.pLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element editorialDecl {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ } |

* + 1. <education>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<education>** contains a description of the educational experience of a person. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **primary**  **secondary**  **undergraduate**  **graduate**  **residency**  **apprenticeship** | | |
| **Contained by** | — |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**education**>Left school at age 16</**education**> |
| **Example** | <**education** **from**="1986-01-01"  **to**="1990-06-30">Attended <**name**>Cherwell School</**name**> </**education**> |
| **Example** | <**education** **notAfter**="1690-06"  **notBefore**="1685-07">Anthony Hammond  smuggled her into the University of Cambridge, where she was  disguised as his male cousin, Jack. She remained there for some  months learning grammar, logic, rhetoric, and ethics</**education**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element education {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <eg>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<eg>** (example) contains any kind of illustrative example. [[22.5. Element Specifications](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TDTAG) [22.5.3. Attribute List Specification](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TDATT)] | |
| **Module** | tagdocs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.egLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l note orig p q ref reg sic stage title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change licence  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** occupation  **textstructure:** argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | If the example contains material in XML markup, either it must be enclosed within a CDATA marked section, or character entity references must be used to represent the markup delimiters. If the example contains well-formed XML, it should be marked using the more specific <egXML> element. |
| **Example** | <**p**>The <**gi**>term</**gi**> element is declared using the following syntax: <**eg**><![CDATA[<!ELEMENT term (%phrase.content;)>]]</**eg**> </**p**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element eg { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq) } |

* + 1. <emph>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<emph>** (emphasized) marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect. [[3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQHE) [3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQH)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | You took the car and did <**emph**>what</**emph**>?!! |
| **Example** | <**q**>What it all comes to is this,</**q**> he said.  <**q**>  <**emph**>What    does Christopher Robin do in the morning nowadays?</**emph**> </**q**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element emph { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent) } |

* + 1. <encodingDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<encodingDesc>** (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. [[2.3. The Encoding Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5) [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.teiHeaderPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **header:** classDecl editorialDecl projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl |
| **Example** | <**encodingDesc**>  <**p**>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All    hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No    formatting or layout information preserved.</**p**> </**encodingDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="1">   <classRef key="model.encodingDescPart"/>   <classRef key="model.pLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element encodingDesc {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  ( [model.encodingDescPart](#TEI.model.encodingDescPart) | [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike) )+ } |

* + 1. <epigraph>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<epigraph>** contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a section or on a title page. [[4.2.3. Arguments, Epigraphs, and Postscripts](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSAE) [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB) [4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **figures:** figure table  **textstructure:** back body div front group opener titlePage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** bibl cit desc gap index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage  **figures:** figure table  **linking:** anchor link  **namesdates:** listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation  **tagdocs:** eg |
| **Example** | <**epigraph** **xml:lang**="la">  <**cit**>   <**bibl**>Lucret.</**bibl**>   <**quote**>    <**l** **part**="F">petere inde coronam,</**l**>    <**l**>Vnde prius nulli velarint tempora Musae.</**l**>   </**quote**>  </**cit**> </**epigraph**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <classRef key="model.common"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element epigraph { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), ( [model.common](#TEI.model.common) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |

* + 1. <event>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<event>** contains data relating to any kind of significant event associated with a person, place, or organization. [[13.3.1. Basic Principles](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSbp)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.sortable (@sortKey)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **where** | indicates the location of an event by pointing to a <place> element   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | |
| **Member of** | model.eventLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** event listEvent org place |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl desc head label listBibl note p ptr  **header:** idno  **linking:** link  **namesdates:** event |
| **Example** | <**person**>  <**event** **type**="mat" **when**="1972-10-12">   <**label**>matriculation</**label**>  </**event**>  <**event** **type**="grad" **when**="1975-06-23">   <**label**>graduation</**label**>  </**event**> </**person**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="idno"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.pLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    <classRef key="model.labelLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>    <elementRef key="link"/>    <elementRef key="idno"/>    <elementRef key="ptr"/>   </alternate>   <elementRef key="event"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element event {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  attribute where { text }?,  (  [idno](#TEI.idno)\*,  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike)+ ),  ( [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) | [linkGrp](#TEI.linkGrp) | [link](#TEI.link) | [idno](#TEI.idno) | [ptr](#TEI.ptr) )\*,  [event](#TEI.event)\*  ) } |

* + 1. <expan>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<expan>** (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation. [[3.5.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAB)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | The content of this element should be the expanded abbreviation, usually (but not always) a complete word or phrase. The <ex> element provided by the transcr module may be used to mark up sequences of letters supplied within such an expansion.  If abbreviations are expanded silently, this practice should be documented in the <editorialDecl>, either with a <normalization> element or a <p>. |
| **Example** | The address is Southmoor <**choice**>  <**expan**>Road</**expan**>  <**abbr**>Rd</**abbr**> </**choice**> |
| **Example** | <**choice** **xml:lang**="la">  <**abbr**>Imp</**abbr**>  <**expan**>Imp<**ex**>erator</**ex**>  </**expan**> </**choice**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element expan {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <extent>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<extent>** describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units. [[2.2.3. Type and Extent of File](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD23) [2.2. The File Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2) [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI) [10.7.1. Object Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/MS.html#msph1)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**extent**>3200 sentences</**extent**> <**extent**>between 10 and 20 Mb</**extent**> <**extent**>ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes</**extent**> |
| **Example** | The <measure> element may be used to supply normalised or machine tractable versions of the size or sizes concerned.  <**extent**>  <**measure** **quantity**="4.2" **unit**="MiB">About four megabytes</**measure**>  <**measure** **quantity**="245" **unit**="pages">245 pages of source    material</**measure**> </**extent**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element extent { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq) } |

* + 1. <faith>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<faith>** specifies the faith, religion, or belief set of a person. [[13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSEpc)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **practicing**  **clandestine**  **patrilineal**  **matrilineal**  **convert** | | |
| **Contained by** | — |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**faith**>protestant</**faith**> |
| **Example** | <**faith** **ref**="http://dbpedia.org/page/Manichaeism">Manichaeism</**faith**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element faith {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  [att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <figDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<figDesc>** (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it. [[14.4. Specific Elements for Graphic Images](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FT.html#FTGRA)] | |
| **Module** | figures |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **figures:** figure |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr address bibl choice cit date desc emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl mentioned name num ptr q ref rs soCalled stage term time title  **figures:** table  **header:** idno  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | This element is intended for use as an alternative to the content of its parent <figure> element ; for example, to display when the image is required but the equipment in use cannot display graphic images. It may also be used for indexing or documentary purposes. |
| **Example** | <**figure**>  <**graphic** **url**="emblem1.png"/>  <**head**>Emblemi d'Amore</**head**>  <**figDesc**>A pair of naked winged cupids, each holding a    flaming torch, in a rural setting.</**figDesc**> </**figure**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element figDesc { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.limitedContent](#TEI.macro.limitedContent) } |

* + 1. <figure>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<figure>** groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration, formula, or figure. [[14.4. Specific Elements for Graphic Images](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FT.html#FTGRA)] | |
| **Module** | figures |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.placement (@place) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.global |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figure table  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp persona placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** bibl cit desc gap graphic head index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage  **figures:** figDesc figure formula table  **linking:** anchor link  **namesdates:** listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph postscript salute signed trailer |
| **Example** | <**figure**>  <**head**>The View from the Bridge</**head**>  <**figDesc**>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground, and a    series of buoys strung out between them.</**figDesc**>  <**graphic** **scale**="0.5"   **url**="http://www.example.org/fig1.png"/> </**figure**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <classRef key="model.headLike"/>   <classRef key="model.common"/>   <elementRef key="figDesc"/>   <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>   <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element figure {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.placement.attributes](#TEI.att.placement),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.written.attributes](#TEI.att.written),  (  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike) | [model.common](#TEI.model.common) | [figDesc](#TEI.figDesc) | [model.graphicLike](#TEI.model.graphicLike) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.divBottom](#TEI.model.divBottom) )\* } |

* + 1. <fileDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<fileDesc>** (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [[2.2. The File Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2) [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **header:** editionStmt extent notesStmt publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt |
| **Note** | The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived. |
| **Example** | <**fileDesc**>  <**titleStmt**>   <**title**>The shortest possible TEI document</**title**>  </**titleStmt**>  <**publicationStmt**>   <**p**>Distributed as part of TEI P5</**p**>  </**publicationStmt**>  <**sourceDesc**>   <**p**>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</**p**>  </**sourceDesc**> </**fileDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <sequence>    <elementRef key="titleStmt"/>    <elementRef key="editionStmt"     minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/>    <elementRef key="seriesStmt"     minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="notesStmt"     minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>   <elementRef key="sourceDesc"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element fileDesc {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  (  (  [titleStmt](#TEI.titleStmt),  [editionStmt](#TEI.editionStmt)?,  [extent](#TEI.extent)?,  [publicationStmt](#TEI.publicationStmt),  [seriesStmt](#TEI.seriesStmt)?,  [notesStmt](#TEI.notesStmt)?  ),  [sourceDesc](#TEI.sourceDesc)+  ) } |

* + 1. <floruit>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<floruit>** contains information about a person's period of activity. [[13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSEpc)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) |
| **Contained by** | — |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**floruit** **notAfter**="1100" **notBefore**="1066"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element floruit {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.att.dimensions),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <foreign>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<foreign>** identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text. [[3.3.2.1. Foreign Words or Expressions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQHF)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | The global *@xml:lang* attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in [6.1. Language Identification](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CH.html#CHSH).  This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global *@xml:lang* attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element.  The <distinct> element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages. |
| **Example** | This is  heathen Greek to you still? Your <**foreign** **xml:lang**="la">lapis  philosophicus</**foreign**>? |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element foreign { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq) } |

* + 1. <forename>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<forename>** contains a forename, given or baptismal name. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**roleName**>Ex-President</**roleName**>  <**forename**>George</**forename**>  <**surname**>Bush</**surname**> </**persName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element forename {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.personal.attributes](#TEI.att.personal),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <formula>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<formula>** contains a mathematical or other formula. [[14.2. Formulæ and Mathematical Expressions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FT.html#FTFOR)] | |
| **Module** | figures |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.notated (@notation) |
| **Member of** | model.graphicLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figure formula table  **header:** change distributor edition extent licence  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** graphic hi  **figures:** formula  character data |
| **Example** | <**formula** **notation**="tex">$E=mc^2$</**formula**> |
| **Example** | <**formula** **notation**="none">E=mc<**hi** **rend**="sup">2</**hi**> </**formula**> |
| **Example** | <**formula** **notation**="mathml">  <**m:math**>   <**m:mi**>E</**m:mi**>   <**m:mo**>=</**m:mo**>   <**m:mi**>m</**m:mi**>   <**m:msup**>    <**m:mrow**>     <**m:mi**>c</**m:mi**>    </**m:mrow**>    <**m:mrow**>     <**m:mn**>2</**m:mn**>    </**m:mrow**>   </**m:msup**>  </**m:math**> </**formula**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>   <classRef key="model.hiLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element formula {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.notated.attributes](#TEI.att.notated),  ( text | [model.graphicLike](#TEI.model.graphicLike) | [model.hiLike](#TEI.model.hiLike) )\* } |

* + 1. <front>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<front>** (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, abstracts, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL) [4. Default Text Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** text |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** divGen gap head index lb listBibl milestone note p pb  **figures:** figure  **linking:** anchor link  **textstructure:** argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph postscript salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **Note** | Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as front matter and which as back matter, the content models for the <front> and <back> elements are identical. |
| **Example** | <**front**>  <**epigraph**>   <**quote**>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis ego ipse oculis meis vidi in ampulla      pendere, et cum illi pueri dicerent: <**q** **xml:lang**="grc">Σίβυλλα τί        θέλεις</**q**>; respondebat illa: <**q** **xml:lang**="grc">ὰποθανεῖν θέλω.</**q**>   </**quote**>  </**epigraph**>  <**div** **type**="dedication">   <**p**>For Ezra Pound <**q** **xml:lang**="it">il miglior fabbro.</**q**>   </**p**>  </**div**> </**front**> |
| **Example** | <**front**>  <**div** **type**="dedication">   <**p**>To our three selves</**p**>  </**div**>  <**div** **type**="preface">   <**head**>Author's Note</**head**>   <**p**>All the characters in this book are purely imaginary, and if the      author has used names that may suggest a reference to living persons      she has done so inadvertently. ...</**p**>  </**div**> </**front**> |
| **Example** | <**front**>  <**div** **type**="abstract">   <**div**>    <**head**> BACKGROUND:</**head**>    <**p**>Food insecurity can put children at greater risk of obesity because        of altered food choices and nonuniform consumption patterns.</**p**>   </**div**>   <**div**>    <**head**> OBJECTIVE:</**head**>    <**p**>We examined the association between obesity and both child-level        food insecurity and personal food insecurity in US children.</**p**>   </**div**>   <**div**>    <**head**> DESIGN:</**head**>    <**p**>Data from 9,701 participants in the National Health and Nutrition        Examination Survey, 2001-2010, aged 2 to 11 years were analyzed.        Child-level food insecurity was assessed with the US Department of        Agriculture's Food Security Survey Module based on eight        child-specific questions. Personal food insecurity was assessed with        five additional questions. Obesity was defined, using physical        measurements, as body mass index (calculated as kg/m2) greater than        or equal to the age- and sex-specific 95th percentile of the Centers        for Disease Control and Prevention growth charts. Logistic        regressions adjusted for sex, race/ethnic group, poverty level, and        survey year were conducted to describe associations between obesity        and food insecurity.</**p**>   </**div**>   <**div**>    <**head**> RESULTS:</**head**>    <**p**>Obesity was significantly associated with personal food insecurity        for children aged 6 to 11 years (odds ratio=1.81; 95% CI 1.33 to        2.48), but not in children aged 2 to 5 years (odds ratio=0.88; 95%        CI 0.51 to 1.51). Child-level food insecurity was not associated        with obesity among 2- to 5-year-olds or 6- to 11-year-olds.</**p**>   </**div**>   <**div**>    <**head**> CONCLUSIONS:</**head**>    <**p**>Personal food insecurity is associated with an increased risk of        obesity only in children aged 6 to 11 years. Personal        food-insecurity measures may give different results than aggregate        food-insecurity measures in children.</**p**>   </**div**>  </**div**> </**front**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>    <classRef key="model.pLike.front"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <alternate>     <sequence>      <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"       minOccurs="0">       <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>       <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>       <classRef key="model.global"/>      </alternate>     </sequence>     <sequence>      <classRef key="model.divLike"/>      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"       minOccurs="0">       <classRef key="model.divLike"/>       <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>       <classRef key="model.global"/>      </alternate>     </sequence>    </alternate>    <sequence minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>      <classRef key="model.global"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element front {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  (  ( [model.frontPart](#TEI.model.frontPart) | [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike) | [model.pLike.front](#TEI.model.pLike.front) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*,  (  (  (  [model.div1Like](#TEI.model.div1Like),  ( [model.div1Like](#TEI.model.div1Like) | [model.frontPart](#TEI.model.frontPart) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*  )  | (  [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike),  ( [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike) | [model.frontPart](#TEI.model.frontPart) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*  )  ),  ( [model.divBottom](#TEI.model.divBottom), ( [model.divBottom](#TEI.model.divBottom) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* )?  )?  ) } |

* + 1. <funder>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<funder>** (funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text. [[2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **header:** editionStmt titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **figures:** figure  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | Funders provide financial support for a project; they are distinct from sponsors (see element <sponsor>), who provide intellectual support and authority. |
| **Example** | <**funder**>The National Endowment for the Humanities, an independent federal agency</**funder**> <**funder**>Directorate General XIII of the Commission of the European Communities</**funder**> <**funder**>The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation</**funder**> <**funder**>The Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of Canada</**funder**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element funder {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

* + 1. <gap>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<gap>** indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible. [[3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDADD)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.timed (@start, @end) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **reason** | gives the reason for omission   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace | | **Suggested values include:** | **cancelled**  **deleted**  **editorial** for features omitted from transcription due to editorial policy  **illegible**  **inaudible**  **irrelevant**  **sampling** | | | **agent** | in the case of text omitted because of damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges  **mildew** damage results from mildew on the leaf surface  **smoke** damage results from smoke | | |
| **Member of** | model.global.edit |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figure table  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp persona placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** desc |
| **Note** | The <gap>, <unclear>, and <del> core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the <damage> and <supplied> elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section [11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHCOMB) for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.  The <gap> tag simply signals the editors decision to omit or inability to transcribe a span of text. Other information, such as the interpretation that text was deliberately erased or covered, should be indicated using the relevant tags, such as <del> in the case of deliberate deletion. |
| **Example** | <**gap** **quantity**="4" **reason**="illegible"  **unit**="chars"/> |
| **Example** | <**gap** **quantity**="1" **reason**="sampling"  **unit**="essay"/> |
| **Example** | <**del**>  <**gap** **atLeast**="4" **atMost**="8"   **reason**="illegible" **unit**="chars"/> </**del**> |
| **Example** | <**gap** **extent**="several lines" **reason**="lost"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <classRef key="model.descLike"/>   <classRef key="model.certLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element gap {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.timed.attributes](#TEI.att.timed),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.att.dimensions),  attribute reason  {  list  {  (  "cancelled"  | "deleted"  | "editorial"  | "illegible"  | "inaudible"  | "irrelevant"  | "sampling"  )+  }  }?,  attribute agent { text }?,  ( [model.descLike](#TEI.model.descLike) | [model.certLike](#TEI.model.certLike) )\* } |

* + 1. <genName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<genName>** (generational name component) contains a name component used to distinguish otherwise similar names on the basis of the relative ages or generations of the persons named. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>Charles</**forename**>  <**genName**>II</**genName**> </**persName**> |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**surname**>Pitt</**surname**>  <**genName**>the Younger</**genName**> </**persName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element genName {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.personal.attributes](#TEI.att.personal),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <geo>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<geo>** (geographical coordinates) contains any expression of a set of geographic coordinates, representing a point, line, or area on the surface of the earth in some notation. [[13.3.4.1. Varieties of Location](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDGEOGva)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) |
| **Member of** | model.measureLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | Character data only |
| **Note** | Uses of <geo> can be associated with a coordinate system, defined by a <geoDecl> element supplied in the TEI header, using the *@decls* attribute. If no such link is made, the assumption is that the content of each <geo> element will be a pair of numbers separated by whitespace, to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the World Geodetic System. |
| **Example** | <**geoDecl** **datum**="WGS84" **xml:id**="WGS">World Geodetic System</**geoDecl**> <**geoDecl** **datum**="OSGB36" **xml:id**="OS">Ordnance Survey</**geoDecl**> <!-- ... --> <**location**>  <**desc**>A tombstone plus six lines of    Anglo-Saxon text, built into the west tower (on the south side    of the archway, at 8 ft. above the ground) of the    Church of St. Mary-le-Wigford in Lincoln.</**desc**>  <**geo** **decls**="#WGS">53.226658 -0.541254</**geo**>  <**geo** **decls**="#OS">SK 97481 70947</**geo**> </**location**> |
| **Example** | <**geo**>41.687142 -74.870109</**geo**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element geo { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring), text } |

* + 1. <geogFeat>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<geogFeat>** (geographical feature name) contains a common noun identifying some geographical feature contained within a geographic name, such as valley, mount, etc. [[13.2.3. Place Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) |
| **Member of** | model.offsetLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**geogName**> The <**geogFeat**>vale</**geogFeat**> of White Horse</**geogName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element geogFeat {  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.att.dimensions),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <geogName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<geogName>** (geographical name) identifies a name associated with some geographical feature such as Windrush Valley or Mount Sinai. [[13.2.3. Place Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**geogName**>  <**geogFeat**>Mount</**geogFeat**>  <**name**>Sinai</**name**> </**geogName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element geogName {  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <gi>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<gi>** (element name) contains the name (generic identifier) of an element. [[22. Documentation Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TD) [22.5. Element Specifications](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TDTAG)] | |
| **Module** | tagdocs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **scheme** | supplies the name of the scheme in which this name is defined.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **TEI** this element is part of the TEI scheme. [Default]  **DBK** (docbook) this element is part of the Docbook scheme.  **XX** (unknown) this element is part of an unknown scheme.  **Schematron** this element is from Schematron.  **HTML** this element is from the HTML scheme. | | |
| **Member of** | model.phrase.xml |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Example** | <**p**>The <**gi**>xhtml:li</**gi**> element is roughly analogous to the <**gi**>item</**gi**> element, as is the <**gi** **scheme**="DBK">listItem</**gi**> element.</**p**>  This example shows the use of both a namespace prefix and the *@scheme* attribute as alternative ways of indicating that the <gi> in question is not a TEI element name: in practice only one method should be adopted. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef key="teidata.name"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element gi { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), attribute scheme { text }?, [teidata.name](#TEI.teidata.name) } |

* + 1. <gloss>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<gloss>** identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase. [[3.3.4. Terms, Glosses, Equivalents, and Descriptions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQU) [22.4.1. Description of Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TDcrystalsCEdc)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.translatable (@versionDate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.cReferencing (@cRef) |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike model.glossLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc category change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor taxonomy  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | The *@target* and *@cRef* attributes are mutually exclusive. |
| **Example** | We may define <**term** **rend**="sc" **xml:id**="tdpv">discoursal point of view</**term**> as  <**gloss** **target**="#tdpv">the relationship, expressed  through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the  fiction.</**gloss**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element gloss {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  [att.translatable.attributes](#TEI.att.translatable),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.att.pointing),  [att.cReferencing.attributes](#TEI.att.cReferencing),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <graphic>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<graphic>** indicates the location of a graphic or illustration, either forming part of a text, or providing an image of it. [[3.9. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COGR) [11.1. Digital Facsimiles](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHFAX)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.media (@width, @height, @scale) att.resourced (@url) att.declaring (@decls) |
| **Member of** | model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figure formula table  **header:** change distributor edition extent licence  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc |
| **Note** | The *@mimeType* attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the image specified by the *@url* attribute.  Within the body of a text, a <graphic> element indicates the presence of a graphic component in the source itself. Within the context of a <facsimile> or <sourceDoc> element, however, a <graphic> element provides an additional digital representation of some part of the source being encoded. |
| **Example** | <**figure**>  <**graphic** **url**="fig1.png"/>  <**head**>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</**head**>  <**figDesc**>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground, and a    series of buoys strung out between them.</**figDesc**> </**figure**> |
| **Example** | <**facsimile**>  <**surfaceGrp** **n**="leaf1">   <**surface**>    <**graphic** **url**="page1.png"/>   </**surface**>   <**surface**>    <**graphic** **url**="page2-highRes.png"/>    <**graphic** **url**="page2-lowRes.png"/>   </**surface**>  </**surfaceGrp**> </**facsimile**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.descLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element graphic {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.media.attributes](#TEI.att.media),  [att.resourced.attributes](#TEI.att.resourced),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  [model.descLike](#TEI.model.descLike)\* } |

* + 1. <group>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<group>** contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc. [[4. Default Text Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS) [4.3.1. Grouped Texts](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSGRP) [15.1. Varieties of Composite Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** group text |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** gap head index lb milestone note pb  **figures:** figure  **linking:** anchor link  **textstructure:** argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph group opener postscript salute signed text trailer |
| **Example** | <**text**> <!-- Section on Alexander Pope starts -->  <**front**> <!-- biographical notice by editor -->  </**front**>  <**group**>   <**text**> <!-- first poem -->   </**text**>   <**text**> <!-- second poem -->   </**text**>  </**group**> </**text**> <!-- end of Pope section--> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>   <sequence>    <alternate>     <elementRef key="text"/>     <elementRef key="group"/>    </alternate>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <elementRef key="text"/>     <elementRef key="group"/>     <classRef key="model.global"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>   <classRef key="model.divBottom"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element group {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  (  ( [model.divTop](#TEI.model.divTop) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*,  ( ( [text](#TEI.text) | [group](#TEI.group) ), ( [text](#TEI.text) | [group](#TEI.group) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* ),  [model.divBottom](#TEI.model.divBottom)\*  ) } |

* + 1. <head>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<head>** (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. [[4.2.1. Headings and Trailers](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSHD)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.placement (@place) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.headLike model.pLike.front |
| **Contained by** | **core:** divGen lg list listBibl  **figures:** figure table  **namesdates:** climate event listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation object org place population state terrain trait  **textstructure:** argument back body div front group postscript |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | The <head> element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a <head> element based on its structural position. A <head> occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a <div1> is the title of that chapter or section. |
| **Example** | The most common use for the <head> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or incipits may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a <trailer>, as in this example:  <**div1** **n**="I" **type**="book">  <**head**>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the ecclesiastical history of    Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</**head**>  <**div2** **type**="section">   <**head**>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</**head**>   <**p**>Proposing as I do ...</**p**>   <**p**>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four hundred and twelve      years passed.</**p**>   <**trailer**>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five hundred and ninety-six      years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint Martin.</**trailer**>  </**div2**> </**div1**> |
| **Example** | When headings are not inline with the running text (see e.g. [the heading "Secunda conclusio"](http://diglib.hab.de/show_image.php?dir=drucke/ed000364&pointer=34)) they might however be encoded as if. The actual placement in the source document can be captured with the *@place* attribute.  <**div** **type**="subsection">  <**head** **place**="margin">Secunda conclusio</**head**>  <**p**>   <**lb** **n**="1251"/>   <**hi** **rend**="large">Potencia: habitus: et actus: recipiunt speciem ab obiectis<**supplied**>.</**supplied**>   </**hi**>   <**lb** **n**="1252"/>Probatur sic. Omne importans necessariam habitudinem ad proprium    [...]  </**p**> </**div**> |
| **Example** | The <head> element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:  With a few exceptions, connectives are equally  useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition, argument. <**list** **rend**="bulleted">  <**head**>Connectives</**head**>  <**item**>above</**item**>  <**item**>accordingly</**item**>  <**item**>across from</**item**>  <**item**>adjacent to</**item**>  <**item**>again</**item**>  <**item**> <!-- ... -->  </**item**> </**list**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <elementRef key="lg"/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.inter"/>   <classRef key="model.lLike"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element head {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.placement.attributes](#TEI.att.placement),  [att.written.attributes](#TEI.att.written),  (  text  | [lg](#TEI.lg) | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.inter](#TEI.model.inter) | [model.lLike](#TEI.model.lLike) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |

* + 1. <hi>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<hi>** (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made. [[3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQHE) [3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQH)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.hiLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc formula  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**hi** **rend**="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</**hi**>  that the said <**hi** **rend**="italic">Walter Shandy</**hi**>, merchant,  in consideration of the said intended marriage ... |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element hi { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [att.written.attributes](#TEI.att.written), [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent) } |

* + 1. <ident>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<ident>** (identifier) contains an identifier or name for an object of some kind in a formal language. <ident> is used for tokens such as variable names, class names, type names, function names etc. in formal programming languages. [[22.1.1. Phrase Level Terms](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TDphraseTE)] | |
| **Module** | tagdocs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | Character data only |
| **Note** | In running prose, this element may be used for any kind of identifier in any formal language. It should not be used for element and attribute names in XML, for which the special elements <gi> and <att> are provided. |
| **Example** | <**ident** **type**="ns">http://www.tei-c.org/ns/Examples</**ident**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element ident { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed), text } |

* + 1. <idno>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<idno>** (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way. [[13.3.1. Basic Principles](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSbp) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26) [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Suggested values include:** | **ISBN** International Standard Book Number: a 13- or (if assigned prior to 2007) 10-digit identifying number assigned by the publishing industry to a published book or similar item, registered with the  [International ISBN Agency.](https://www.isbn-international.org)  **ISSN** International Standard Serial Number: an eight-digit number to uniquely identify a serial publication.  **DOI** Digital Object Identifier: a unique string of letters and numbers assigned to an electronic document.  **URI** Uniform Resource Identifier: a string of characters to uniquely identify a resource which usually contains indication of the means of accessing that resource, the name of its host, and its filepath.  **VIAF** A data number in the Virtual Internet Authority File assigned to link different names in catalogs around the world for the same entity.  **ESTC** English Short-Title Catalogue number: an identifying number assigned to a document in English printed in the British Isles or North America before 1801.  **OCLC** OCLC control number (record number) for the union catalog record in WorldCat, a union catalog for member libraries in the Online Computer Library Center global cooperative. | | |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder idno language licence principal publicationStmt seriesStmt sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education event faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality nym objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **header:** idno  character data |
| **Note** | <idno> should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web. Some suggested values for *@type* on <idno> are ISBN, ISSN, DOI, and URI. |
| **Example** | <**idno** **type**="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="ISSN">0143-3385</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="DOI">10.1000/123</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="URI">http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="URI">http://authority.nzetc.org/463/</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="Wing">C695</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="oldCat">  <**g** **ref**="#sym"/>345 </**idno**>  In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a <glyph> or <char> element referenced here as #sym. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <elementRef key="idno"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element idno {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute type  {  "ISBN" | "ISSN" | "DOI" | "URI" | "VIAF" | "ESTC" | "OCLC"  }?,  ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [idno](#TEI.idno) )\* } |

* + 1. <imprimatur>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<imprimatur>** contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** titlePage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**imprimatur**>Licensed and entred acording to Order.</**imprimatur**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element imprimatur { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent) } |

* + 1. <index>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<index>** (index entry) marks a location to be indexed for whatever purpose. [[3.8.2. Index Entries](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONOIX)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.spanning (@spanTo)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **indexName** | a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>), supplying a name to specify which index (of several) the index entry belongs to.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.name | | **Note** | This attribute makes it possible to create multiple indexes for a text. | | |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi index item l label lg list mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figure table  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp persona placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** index term |
| **Example** | David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen <**index** **indexName**="NAMES">  <**term**>Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</**term**> </**index**> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura <**index** **indexName**="PLACES">  <**term**>Sura</**term**> </**index**> was David's own first cousin. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <elementRef key="term"/>   <elementRef key="index" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element index {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.spanning.attributes](#TEI.att.spanning),  attribute indexName { text }?,  ( [term](#TEI.term), [index](#TEI.index)? )\* } |

* + 1. <interp>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<interp>** (interpretation) summarizes a specific interpretative annotation which can be linked to a span of text. [[17.3. Spans and Interpretations](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AISP)] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.interpLike (@type, @inst) |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** interpGrp s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figure table  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp persona placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** desc  character data |
| **Note** | Generally, each <interp> element carries an *@xml:id* attribute. This permits the encoder to explicitly associate the interpretation represented by the content of an <interp> with any textual element through its *@ana* attribute.  Alternatively (or, in addition) an <interp> may carry an *@inst* attribute which points to one or more textual elements to which the analysis represented by the content of the <interp> applies. |
| **Example** | <**interp** **type**="structuralunit"  **xml:id**="ana\_am">aftermath</**interp**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.descLike"/>   <classRef key="model.certLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element interp {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.interpLike.attributes](#TEI.att.interpLike),  ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.descLike](#TEI.model.descLike) | [model.certLike](#TEI.model.certLike) )\* } |

* + 1. <interpGrp>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<interpGrp>** (interpretation group) collects together a set of related interpretations which share responsibility or type. [[17.3. Spans and Interpretations](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AISP)] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.interpLike (@type, @inst) |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figure table  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp persona placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp  **core:** desc |
| **Note** | Any number of <interp> elements. |
| **Example** | <**interpGrp** **resp**="#TMA"  **type**="structuralunit">  <**desc**>basic structural organization</**desc**>  <**interp** **xml:id**="I1">introduction</**interp**>  <**interp** **xml:id**="I2">conflict</**interp**>  <**interp** **xml:id**="I3">climax</**interp**>  <**interp** **xml:id**="I4">revenge</**interp**>  <**interp** **xml:id**="I5">reconciliation</**interp**>  <**interp** **xml:id**="I6">aftermath</**interp**> </**interpGrp**> <**bibl** **xml:id**="TMA"> <!-- bibliographic citation for source of this interpretive framework --> </**bibl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.descLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="interp"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element interpGrp {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.interpLike.attributes](#TEI.att.interpLike),  ( [model.descLike](#TEI.model.descLike)\*, [interp](#TEI.interp)+ ) } |

* + 1. <item>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<item>** contains one component of a list. [[3.7. Lists](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI) [2.6. The Revision Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** list |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks.  Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global *@n* attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the *@n* attribute on the <item> element is by definition synonymous with the use of the <label> element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the <label> element, not *@n*. |
| **Example** | <**list** **rend**="numbered">  <**head**>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</**head**>  <**item** **n**="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the Church revenues.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.6">The priest Cato.</**item**>  <**item**> ...</**item**> </**list**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element item {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |

* + 1. <keywords>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<keywords>** contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. [[2.4.3. The Text Classification](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD43)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **scheme** | identifies the controlled vocabulary within which the set of keywords concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** textClass |
| **May contain** | **core:** list term |
| **Note** | Each individual keyword (including compound subject headings) should be supplied as a <term> element directly within the <keywords> element. An alternative usage, in which each <term> appears within a <item> inside a <list> is permitted for backwards compatibility, but is deprecated.  If no control list exists for the keywords used, then no value should be supplied for the *@scheme* attribute. |
| **Example** | <**keywords** **scheme**="http://classificationweb.net">  <**term**>Babbage, Charles</**term**>  <**term**>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</**term**> </**keywords**> |
| **Example** | <**keywords**>  <**term**>Fermented beverages</**term**>  <**term**>Central Andes</**term**>  <**term**>Schinus molle</**term**>  <**term**>Molle beer</**term**>  <**term**>Indigenous peoples</**term**>  <**term**>Ethnography</**term**>  <**term**>Archaeology</**term**> </**keywords**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <elementRef key="term"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <elementRef key="list"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element keywords {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  attribute scheme { text }?,  ( [term](#TEI.term)+ | [list](#TEI.list) ) } |

* + 1. <l>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<l>** (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse. [[3.12.1. Core Tags for Verse](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COVE) [3.12. Passages of Verse or Drama](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CODV) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.fragmentable (@part) |
| **Member of** | model.lLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del emph head hi item lg note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear  **figures:** cell figure  **header:** change licence  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** occupation  **textstructure:** argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**l** **met**="x/x/x/x/x/" **real**="/xx/x/x/x/">Shall I compare thee to a summer's day?</**l**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:l[. = current()])]"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain lines or lg elements. </s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.inter"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element l {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.fragmentable.attributes](#TEI.att.fragmentable),  ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.inter](#TEI.model.inter) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |

* + 1. <label>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<label>** contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary. [[3.7. Lists](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.placement (@place) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.labelLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del desc emph head hi item l lg list note orig p q ref reg sic stage title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change licence  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** climate event location occupation org place population state terrain trait  **textstructure:** argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | Labels are commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global *@xml:lang* attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:  <**list** **type**="gloss" **xml:lang**="enm">  <**head** **xml:lang**="en">Vocabulary</**head**>  <**headLabel** **xml:lang**="en">Middle English</**headLabel**>  <**headItem** **xml:lang**="en">New English</**headItem**>  <**label**>nu</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">now</**item**>  <**label**>lhude</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">loudly</**item**>  <**label**>bloweth</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">blooms</**item**>  <**label**>med</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">meadow</**item**>  <**label**>wude</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">wood</**item**>  <**label**>awe</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">ewe</**item**>  <**label**>lhouth</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">lows</**item**>  <**label**>sterteth</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">bounds, frisks (cf. <**cit**>    <**ref**>Chaucer, K.T.644</**ref**>    <**quote**>a courser, <**term**>sterting</**term**>as the fyr</**quote**>   </**cit**>  </**item**>  <**label**>verteth</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="la">pedit</**item**>  <**label**>murie</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">merrily</**item**>  <**label**>swik</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">cease</**item**>  <**label**>naver</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">never</**item**> </**list**> |
| **Example** | Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon's *Autobiography*. In this usage the <label> element is synonymous with the *@n* attribute on the <item> element:  I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred  in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos. <**list** **rend**="runon" **type**="ordered">  <**label**>(1)</**label**>  <**item**>My first rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been sent to the press.</**item**>  <**label**>(2) </**label**>  <**item**>Not a sheet has been seen by any human eyes, excepting those of the author and the    printer: the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.</**item**> </**list**> |
| **Example** | Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:  <**list** **type**="gloss">  <**label**>March 1757.</**label**>  <**item**>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</**item**>  <**label**>March 8th.</**label**>  <**item**>I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.</**item**>  <**label**>June.</**label**>  <**item**>I saw Mademoiselle Curchod — <**quote** **xml:lang**="la">Omnia vincit amor, et nos cedamus      amori.</**quote**>  </**item**>  <**label**>August.</**label**>  <**item**>I went to Crassy, and staid two days.</**item**> </**list**>  Note that the <label> might also appear within the <item> rather than as its sibling. Though syntactically valid, this usage is not recommended TEI practice. |
| **Example** | Labels may also be used to represent a label or heading attached to a paragraph or sequence of paragraphs not treated as a structural division, or to a group of verse lines. Note that, in this case, the <label> element appears *within* the <p> or <lg> element, rather than as a preceding sibling of it.  <**p**>[...] <**lb**/>&amp; n’entrer en mauuais &amp; mal-heu- <**lb**/>ré meſnage. Or des que le conſente- <**lb**/>ment des parties y eſt le mariage eſt <**lb**/> arreſté, quoy que de faict il ne ſoit <**label** **place**="margin">Puiſſance maritale    entre les Romains.</**label**>  <**lb**/> conſommé. Depuis la conſomma- <**lb**/>tion du mariage la femme eſt ſoubs <**lb**/> la puiſſance du mary, s’il n’eſt eſcla- <**lb**/>ue ou enfant de famille : car en ce <**lb**/> cas, la femme, qui a eſpouſé vn en- <**lb**/>fant de famille, eſt ſous la puiſſance  [...]</**p**>  In this example the text of the label appears in the right hand margin of the original source, next to the paragraph it describes, but approximately in the middle of it. If so desired the *@type* attribute may be used to distinguish different categories of label. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element label {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.placement.attributes](#TEI.att.placement),  [att.written.attributes](#TEI.att.written),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <langKnowledge>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<langKnowledge>** (language knowledge) summarizes the state of a person's linguistic knowledge, either as prose or by a list of <langKnown> elements. [[13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSEpc)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **listening**  **speaking**  **reading**  **writing** | | | **tags** | supplies one or more valid language tags for the languages specified   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.language separated by whitespace | | **Note** | This attribute should be supplied only if the element contains no <langKnown> children. Its values are language ‘tags’ as defined in [RFC 4646](http://www.rfc-editor.org/rfc/rfc4646.txt) or its successor | | |
| **Contained by** | — |
| **May contain** | **certainty:** precision  **core:** p  **namesdates:** langKnown |
| **Example** | <**langKnowledge** **tags**="en-GB fr">  <**p**>British English and French</**p**> </**langKnowledge**> |
| **Example** | <**langKnowledge**>  <**langKnown** **level**="H" **tag**="en-GB">British English</**langKnown**>  <**langKnown** **level**="M" **tag**="fr">French</**langKnown**> </**langKnowledge**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="precision"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>    <elementRef key="langKnown"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element langKnowledge {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  attribute tags { list { + } }?,  ( [precision](#TEI.precision)\*, ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike) | [langKnown](#TEI.langKnown)+ ) ) } |

* + 1. <langKnown>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<langKnown>** (language known) summarizes the state of a person's linguistic competence, i.e., knowledge of a single language. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **tag** | supplies a valid language tag for the language concerned.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | teidata.language | | **Note** | The value for this attribute should be a language ‘tag’ as defined in [BCP 47](https://tools.ietf.org/html/bcp47). | | | **level** | a code indicating the person's level of knowledge for this language   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.word | | |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** langKnowledge |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **figures:** figure  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**langKnown** **level**="H" **tag**="en-GB">British English</**langKnown**> <**langKnown** **level**="M" **tag**="fr">French</**langKnown**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element langKnown {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  attribute tag { text },  attribute level { text }?,  [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

* + 1. <langUsage>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<langUsage>** (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text. [[2.4.2. Language Usage](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD41) [2.4. The Profile Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **header:** language |
| **Example** | <**langUsage**>  <**language** **ident**="fr-CA" **usage**="60">Québecois</**language**>  <**language** **ident**="en-CA" **usage**="20">Canadian business English</**language**>  <**language** **ident**="en-GB" **usage**="20">British English</**language**> </**langUsage**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <elementRef key="language"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element langUsage {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | [language](#TEI.language)+ ) } |

* + 1. <language>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<language>** characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text. [[2.4.2. Language Usage](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD41)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **ident** | (identifier) Supplies a language code constructed as defined in [BCP 47](https://tools.ietf.org/html/bcp47) which is used to identify the language documented by this element, and which is referenced by the global *@xml:lang* attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | teidata.language | | | **usage** | specifies the approximate percentage (by volume) of the text which uses this language.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [nonNegativeInteger](https://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/#nonNegativeInteger) | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** langUsage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **figures:** figure  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | Particularly for sublanguages, an informal prose characterization should be supplied as content for the element. |
| **Example** | <**langUsage**>  <**language** **ident**="en-US" **usage**="75">modern American English</**language**>  <**language** **ident**="i-az-Arab" **usage**="20">Azerbaijani in Arabic script</**language**>  <**language** **ident**="x-lap" **usage**="05">Pig Latin</**language**> </**langUsage**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element language {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  attribute ident { text },  attribute usage { text }?,  [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

* + 1. <lb>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<lb>** (line beginning) marks the beginning of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text. [[3.10.3. Milestone Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break) |
| **Member of** | model.milestoneLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list listBibl mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figure table  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName person personGrp persona placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | By convention, <lb> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The *@n* attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next <lb> element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the <l> element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked.  The *@type* attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialized attributes *@break*, *@ed*, or *@edRef* should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives. |
| **Example** | This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:  <**l**>Of Mans First Disobedience,<**lb** **ed**="1674"/> and<**lb** **ed**="1667"/> the Fruit</**l**> <**l**>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<**lb** **ed**="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</**l**> <**l**>Brought Death into the World,<**lb** **ed**="1667"/> and all<**lb** **ed**="1674"/> our woe,</**l**> |
| **Example** | This example encodes typographical line breaks as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The *@break* attribute is used to show that the line break does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.  <**titlePart**>  <**lb**/>With Additions, ne-<**lb** **break**="no"/>ver before Printed. </**titlePart**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <empty/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element lb {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.edition.attributes](#TEI.att.edition),  [att.spanning.attributes](#TEI.att.spanning),  [att.breaking.attributes](#TEI.att.breaking),  empty } |

* + 1. <lg>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<lg>** (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc. [[3.12.1. Core Tags for Verse](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COVE) [3.12. Passages of Verse or Drama](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CODV) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) |
| **Member of** | macro.paraContent model.divPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del emph head hi item lg note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear  **figures:** cell figure  **header:** change licence  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** occupation  **textstructure:** argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** desc gap head index l label lb lg milestone note pb stage  **figures:** figure  **linking:** anchor link  **textstructure:** argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute signed trailer |
| **Note** | contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading. |
| **Example** | <**lg** **type**="free">  <**l**>Let me be my own fool</**l**>  <**l**>of my own making, the sum of it</**l**> </**lg**> <**lg** **type**="free">  <**l**>is equivocal.</**l**>  <**l**>One says of the drunken farmer:</**l**> </**lg**> <**lg** **type**="free">  <**l**>leave him lay off it. And this is</**l**>  <**l**>the explanation.</**l**> </**lg**> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:assert test="count(descendant::tei:lg|descendant::tei:l|descendant::tei:gap) > 0">An lg element must contain at least one child l, lg, or gap element.</sch:assert> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:lg[. = current()])]"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain line groups. </s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.lLike"/>    <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>    <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>    <elementRef key="lg"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.lLike"/>    <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>    <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>    <elementRef key="lg"/>   </alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element lg {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.divLike.attributes](#TEI.att.divLike),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  (  ( [model.divTop](#TEI.model.divTop) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*,  ( [model.lLike](#TEI.model.lLike) | [model.stageLike](#TEI.model.stageLike) | [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike) | [lg](#TEI.lg) ),  ( [model.lLike](#TEI.model.lLike) | [model.stageLike](#TEI.model.stageLike) | [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [lg](#TEI.lg) )\*,  ( [model.divBottom](#TEI.model.divBottom), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )\*  ) } |

* + 1. <licence>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<licence>** contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.availabilityPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** availability |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | A <licence> element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the text in question. The *@target* attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The *@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from* or *@to* attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence. |
| **Example** | <**licence** **target**="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-Help.html#licensing"> Licence: Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 New Zealand Licence </**licence**> |
| **Example** | <**availability**>  <**licence** **notBefore**="2013-01-01"   **target**="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/">   <**p**>The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence      applies to this document.</**p**>   <**p**>The licence was added on January 1, 2013.</**p**>  </**licence**> </**availability**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element licence {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.att.pointing),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |

* + 1. <link>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<link>** defines an association or hypertextual link among elements or passages, of some type not more precisely specifiable by other elements. [[16.1. Links](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAPT)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figure table  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education event faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality object objectName occupation offset org orgName persName person personGrp persona place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | This element should only be used to encode associations not otherwise provided for by more specific elements.  The location of this element within a document has no significance, unless it is included within a <linkGrp>, in which case it may inherit the value of the *@type* attribute from the value given on the <linkGrp>. |
| **Example** | <**s** **n**="1">The state Supreme Court has refused to release <**rs** **xml:id**="R1">   <**rs** **xml:id**="R2">Rahway State Prison</**rs**> inmate</**rs**>  <**rs** **xml:id**="R3">James Scott</**rs**> on bail.</**s**> <**s** **n**="2">  <**rs** **xml:id**="R4">The fighter</**rs**> is serving 30-40 years  for a 1975 armed robbery conviction in <**rs** **xml:id**="R5">the penitentiary</**rs**>. </**s**> <!-- ... --> <**linkGrp** **type**="periphrasis">  <**link** **target**="#R1 #R3 #R4"/>  <**link** **target**="#R2 #R5"/> </**linkGrp**> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:assert test="contains(normalize-space(@target),' ')">You must supply at least two values for @target or on <sch:name/> </sch:assert> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <empty/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element link {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.att.pointing),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  empty } |

* + 1. <list>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<list>** contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [[3.7. Lists](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | describes the nature of the items in the list.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Suggested values include:** | **gloss** each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a <label> element preceding the list item.  **index** each list item is an entry in an index such as the alphabetical topical index at the back of a print volume.  **instructions** each list item is a step in a sequence of instructions, as in a recipe.  **litany** each list item is one of a sequence of petitions, supplications or invocations, typically in a religious ritual.  **syllogism** each list item is part of an argument consisting of two or more propositions and a final conclusion derived from them. | | **Note** | Previous versions of these Guidelines recommended the use of *@type* on <list> to encode the rendering or appearance of a list (whether it was bulleted, numbered, etc.). The current recommendation is to use the *@rend* or *@style* attributes for these aspects of a list, while using *@type* for the more appropriate task of characterizing the nature of the content of a list.  The formal syntax of the element declarations allows <label> tags to be omitted from lists tagged <list type="gloss">; this is however a semantic error. | | |
| **Member of** | model.listLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del desc emph head hi item l note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change keywords licence revisionDesc sourceDesc  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** occupation  **textstructure:** argument back body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** desc gap head index item label lb milestone note pb  **figures:** figure  **linking:** anchor link  **textstructure:** argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute signed trailer |
| **Note** | May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings. |
| **Example** | <**list** **rend**="numbered">  <**item**>a butcher</**item**>  <**item**>a baker</**item**>  <**item**>a candlestick maker, with  <**list** **rend**="bulleted">    <**item**>rings on his fingers</**item**>    <**item**>bells on his toes</**item**>   </**list**>  </**item**> </**list**> |
| **Example** | <**list** **rend**="bulleted" **type**="syllogism">  <**item**>All Cretans are liars.</**item**>  <**item**>Epimenides is a Cretan.</**item**>  <**item**>ERGO Epimenides is a liar.</**item**> </**list**> |
| **Example** | <**list** **rend**="simple" **type**="litany">  <**item**>God save us from drought.</**item**>  <**item**>God save us from pestilence.</**item**>  <**item**>God save us from wickedness in high places.</**item**>  <**item**>Praise be to God.</**item**> </**list**> |
| **Example** | The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):  <**div1** **type**="section">  <**head**>Athelstan's Ordinance</**head**>  <**list** **rend**="numbered">   <**item** **n**="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who is caught with      the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of the goods is] over      eightpence.   <**list** **rend**="numbered">     <**item** **n**="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief with his          wergild — and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that account — or to          clear himself by an oath of that amount.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or to escape, he is          not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].</**item**>     <**item** **n**="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40 days, and he may          then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to stand surety for him          that he will desist for ever.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild,          or to bring him back there.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild,          whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and everyone of those who          supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a fine.</**item**>    </**list**>   </**item**>   <**item** **n**="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these lordless men, from whom      no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to fetch back such a      person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.   <**list** **rend**="numbered">     <**item** **n**="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on that appointed day,          he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him is to strike him          down as a thief.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him with his wergild          or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</**item**>    </**list**>   </**item**>   <**item** **n**="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses justice and upholds      his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the value of the goods and      120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he demands justice as      often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have done, if he had      refused him justice.   <**list** **rend**="numbered">     <**item** **n**="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his slave, and it becomes          known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his wergild on the first          occasionp if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all that he owns.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our reeves, who has been          an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to the same.</**item**>    </**list**>   </**item**>   <**item** **n**="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced concerning treachery to      a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot deny it or is      afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</**item**>  </**list**> </**div1**>  Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired. |
| **Example** | <**p**>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public council ... and they  confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross, and afterwards  inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the sign of the Holy  Cross. <**list** **rend**="simple">   <**item**>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of York, have      subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with the sign of the Holy      Cross.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have subscribed with      the sign of the Holy Cross.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have subscribed with the      sign of the Holy Cross.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have subscribed with the      sign of the Holy Cross.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed with thef sign of      the Holy Cross.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with devout will.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the sign of the Holy      Cross.</**item**>  </**list**> </**p**> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:list[@type='gloss']"> <sch:assert test="tei:label">The content of a "gloss" list should include a sequence of one or more pairs of a label element followed by an item element</sch:assert> </sch:rule> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>    <elementRef key="desc"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </alternate>   <alternate>    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <elementRef key="item"/>     <classRef key="model.global"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>    </sequence>    <sequence>     <elementRef key="headLabel"      minOccurs="0"/>     <elementRef key="headItem"      minOccurs="0"/>     <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="1">      <elementRef key="label"/>      <classRef key="model.global"       maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>      <elementRef key="item"/>      <classRef key="model.global"       maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>     </sequence>    </sequence>   </alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element list {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  [att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute type  {  "gloss" | "index" | "instructions" | "litany" | "syllogism"  }?,  (  ( [model.divTop](#TEI.model.divTop) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [desc](#TEI.desc)\* )\*,  (  ( [item](#TEI.item), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+  | (  [headLabel](#TEI.headLabel)?,  [headItem](#TEI.headItem)?,  ( [label](#TEI.label), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*, [item](#TEI.item), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+  )  ),  ( [model.divBottom](#TEI.model.divBottom), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )\*  ) } |

* + 1. <listBibl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listBibl>** (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind. [[3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBITY) [2.2.7. The Source Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.biblLike model.frontPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl note orig p q ref reg relatedItem sic stage title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change licence sourceDesc taxonomy  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** climate event location object occupation org place population state terrain trait  **textstructure:** argument back body div docEdition epigraph front imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl desc head lb listBibl milestone pb  **linking:** anchor  **namesdates:** listRelation relation |
| **Example** | <**listBibl**>  <**head**>Works consulted</**head**>  <**bibl**>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to    Literature in English (Yale, 1990)  </**bibl**>  <**biblStruct**>   <**analytic**>    <**title**>The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</**title**>   </**analytic**>   <**monogr**>    <**title**>The Penny Histories</**title**>    <**author**>Victor E Neuberg</**author**>    <**imprint**>     <**publisher**>OUP</**publisher**>     <**date**>1968</**date**>    </**imprint**>   </**monogr**>  </**biblStruct**> </**listBibl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="desc"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="relation"/>    <elementRef key="listRelation"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listBibl {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  (  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  [desc](#TEI.desc)\*,  ( [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) | [model.milestoneLike](#TEI.model.milestoneLike) )+,  ( [relation](#TEI.relation) | [listRelation](#TEI.listRelation) )\*  ) } |

* + 1. <listEvent>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listEvent>** (list of events) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable event. [[13.3.1. Basic Principles](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSbp)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Member of** | model.eventLike model.listLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del desc emph head hi item l note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change licence sourceDesc  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** listEvent occupation org place  **textstructure:** argument back body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc head  **namesdates:** event listEvent listRelation relation |
| **Example** | <**listEvent**>  <**head**>Battles of the American Civil War: Kentucky</**head**>  <**event** **when**="1861-09-19" **xml:id**="event01">   <**label**>Barbourville</**label**>   <**desc**>The Battle of Barbourville was one of the early engagements of      the American Civil War. It occurred September 19, 1861, in Knox      County, Kentucky during the campaign known as the Kentucky Confederate      Offensive. The battle is considered the first Confederate victory in      the commonwealth, and threw a scare into Federal commanders, who      rushed troops to central Kentucky in an effort to repel the invasion,      which was finally thwarted at the <**ref** **target**="#event02">Battle of        Camp Wildcat</**ref**> in October.</**desc**>  </**event**>  <**event** **when**="1861-10-21" **xml:id**="event02">   <**label**>Camp Wild Cat</**label**>   <**desc**>The Battle of Camp Wildcat (also known as Wildcat Mountain and Camp      Wild Cat) was one of the early engagements of the American Civil      War. It occurred October 21, 1861, in northern Laurel County, Kentucky      during the campaign known as the Kentucky Confederate Offensive. The      battle is considered one of the very first Union victories, and marked      the first engagement of troops in the commonwealth of Kentucky.</**desc**>  </**event**>  <**event** **from**="1864-06-11" **to**="1864-06-12"   **xml:id**="event03">   <**label**>Cynthiana</**label**>   <**desc**>The Battle of Cynthiana (or Kellar’s Bridge) was an engagement      during the American Civil War that was fought on June 11 and 12, 1864,      in Harrison County, Kentucky, near the town of Cynthiana. A part of      Confederate Brigadier General John Hunt Morgan's 1864 Raid into      Kentucky, the battle resulted in a victory by Union forces over the      raiders and saved the town from capture.</**desc**>  </**event**> </**listEvent**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="desc"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.eventLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="relation"/>    <elementRef key="listRelation"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listEvent {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  ( [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*, [desc](#TEI.desc)\*, [model.eventLike](#TEI.model.eventLike)+, ( [relation](#TEI.relation) | [listRelation](#TEI.listRelation) )\* ) } |

* + 1. <listNym>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listNym>** (list of canonical names) contains a list of nyms, that is, standardized names for any thing. [[13.3.6. Names and Nyms](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDNYM)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Member of** | model.listLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del desc emph head hi item l note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change licence sourceDesc  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** listNym occupation  **textstructure:** argument back body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc head  **namesdates:** listNym listRelation nym relation |
| **Note** | The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of names of a particular type if convenient. |
| **Example** | <**listNym** **type**="floral">  <**nym** **xml:id**="ROSE">   <**form**>Rose</**form**>  </**nym**>  <**nym** **xml:id**="DAISY">   <**form**>Daisy</**form**>   <**etym**>Contraction of <**mentioned**>day's eye</**mentioned**>   </**etym**>  </**nym**>  <**nym** **xml:id**="HTHR">   <**form**>Heather</**form**>  </**nym**> </**listNym**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="desc"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <elementRef key="nym"/>    <elementRef key="listNym"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="relation"/>    <elementRef key="listRelation"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listNym {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  ( [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*, [desc](#TEI.desc)\*, ( [nym](#TEI.nym) | [listNym](#TEI.listNym) )+, ( [relation](#TEI.relation) | [listRelation](#TEI.listRelation) )\* ) } |

* + 1. <listObject>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listObject>** (list of objects) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable physical object. [[13.3.5. Objects](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDOBJ)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Member of** | model.listLike model.objectLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del desc emph head hi item l note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change licence sourceDesc  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** listObject occupation  **textstructure:** argument back body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc head  **namesdates:** listObject listRelation object relation |
| **Note** | The *@type* attribute may be used to distinguish different types of objects. |
| **Example** | <**listObject**>  <**object** **xml:id**="AlfredJewel">   <**objectIdentifier**>    <**country**>United Kingdom</**country**>    <**region**>Oxfordshire</**region**>    <**settlement**>Oxford</**settlement**>    <**institution**>University of Oxford</**institution**>    <**repository**>Ashmolean Museum</**repository**>    <**collection**>English Treasures</**collection**>    <**idno** **type**="ashmolean">AN1836p.135.371</**idno**>    <**idno** **type**="wikipedia">https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alfred\_Jewel</**idno**>    <**objectName**>Alfred Jewel</**objectName**>   </**objectIdentifier**>   <**physDesc**>    <**p**> The Alfred Jewel is about 6.4 cm in length and is made of combination of filigreed <**material**>gold</**material**>        surrounding a polished teardrop shaped piece of transparent <**material**>quartz</**material**>. Underneath the rock crystal        is a cloisonné enamel image of a man with ecclesiastical symbols. The sides of the jewel holding the crystal in        place contain an openwork inscription saying "AELFRED MEC HEHT GEWYRCAN", meaning 'Alfred ordered me made'. </**p**>   </**physDesc**>   <**history**>    <**origin**>It is generally accepted that the Alfred Jewel dates from the <**origDate**>late 9th Century</**origDate**> and was        most likely made in <**origPlace**>England</**origPlace**>. </**origin**>    <**provenance** **when**="1693">The jewel was discovered in 1693 at Petherton Park, North Petherton in the English county of        Somerset, on land owned by Sir Thomas Wroth. North Petherton is about 8 miles away from Athelney, where King Alfred        founded a monastery. </**provenance**>    <**provenance** **when**="1698">A description of the Alfred Jewel was first published in 1698, in the Philosophical        Transactions of the Royal Society.</**provenance**>    <**acquisition**> It was bequeathed to Oxford University by Colonel Nathaniel Palmer (c. 1661-1718) and today is in the        Ashmolean Museum in Oxford. </**acquisition**>   </**history**>  </**object**> </**listObject**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="desc"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.objectLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="relation"/>    <elementRef key="listRelation"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listObject {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  ( [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*, [desc](#TEI.desc)\*, [model.objectLike](#TEI.model.objectLike)+, ( [relation](#TEI.relation) | [listRelation](#TEI.listRelation) )\* ) } |

* + 1. <listOrg>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listOrg>** (list of organizations) contains a list of elements, each of which provides information about an identifiable organization. [[13.2.2. Organizational Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDORG)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Member of** | model.listLike model.orgPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del desc emph head hi item l note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change licence sourceDesc  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** listOrg occupation org  **textstructure:** argument back body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc head  **namesdates:** listOrg listRelation org relation |
| **Note** | The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of organizations of a particular type if convenient. |
| **Example** | <**listOrg**>  <**head**>Libyans</**head**>  <**org**>   <**orgName**>Adyrmachidae</**orgName**>   <**desc**>These people have, in most points, the same customs as the Egyptians, but      use the costume of the Libyans. Their women wear on each leg a ring made of      bronze [...]</**desc**>  </**org**>  <**org**>   <**orgName**>Nasamonians</**orgName**>   <**desc**>In summer they leave their flocks and herds upon the sea-shore, and go up      the country to a place called Augila, where they gather the dates from the      palms [...]</**desc**>  </**org**>  <**org**>   <**orgName**>Garamantians</**orgName**>   <**desc**>[...] avoid all society or intercourse with their fellow-men, have no      weapon of war, and do not know how to defend themselves. [...]</**desc**> <!-- ... -->  </**org**> </**listOrg**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="desc"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <elementRef key="org"/>    <elementRef key="listOrg"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="relation"/>    <elementRef key="listRelation"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listOrg {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  ( [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*, [desc](#TEI.desc)\*, ( [org](#TEI.org) | [listOrg](#TEI.listOrg) )+, ( [relation](#TEI.relation) | [listRelation](#TEI.listRelation) )\* ) } |

* + 1. <listPerson>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listPerson>** (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source. [[13.3.2. The Person Element](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSE) [15.2. Contextual Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAH) [2.4. The Profile Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Member of** | model.listLike model.orgPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del desc emph head hi item l note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change licence sourceDesc  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** listPerson occupation org  **textstructure:** argument back body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc head  **namesdates:** listPerson listRelation org person personGrp relation |
| **Note** | The *@type* attribute may be used to distinguish lists of people of a particular type if convenient. |
| **Example** | <**listPerson** **type**="respondents">  <**personGrp** **xml:id**="PXXX"/>  <**person** **age**="mid" **sex**="2" **xml:id**="P1234"/>  <**person** **age**="mid" **sex**="1" **xml:id**="P4332"/>  <**listRelation**>   <**relation** **mutual**="#P1234 #P4332"    **name**="spouse" **type**="personal"/>  </**listRelation**> </**listPerson**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="desc"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.personLike"/>    <elementRef key="listPerson"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="relation"/>    <elementRef key="listRelation"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listPerson {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  (  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  [desc](#TEI.desc)\*,  ( [model.personLike](#TEI.model.personLike) | [listPerson](#TEI.listPerson) )+,  ( [relation](#TEI.relation) | [listRelation](#TEI.listRelation) )\*  ) } |

* + 1. <listPlace>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listPlace>** (list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships (other than containment) defined amongst them. [[2.2.7. The Source Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3) [13.3.4. Places](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDGEOG)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Member of** | model.listLike model.orgPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del desc emph head hi item l note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change licence sourceDesc  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** listPlace occupation org place  **textstructure:** argument back body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc head  **namesdates:** listPlace listRelation place relation |
| **Example** | <**listPlace** **type**="offshoreIslands">  <**place**>   <**placeName**>La roche qui pleure</**placeName**>  </**place**>  <**place**>   <**placeName**>Ile aux cerfs</**placeName**>  </**place**> </**listPlace**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="desc"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>    <elementRef key="listPlace"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="relation"/>    <elementRef key="listRelation"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listPlace {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  (  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  [desc](#TEI.desc)\*,  ( [model.placeLike](#TEI.model.placeLike) | [listPlace](#TEI.listPlace) )+,  ( [relation](#TEI.relation) | [listRelation](#TEI.listRelation) )\*  ) } |

* + 1. <listRelation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listRelation>** provides information about relationships identified amongst people, places, and organizations, either informally as prose or as formally expressed relation links. [[13.3.2.3. Personal Relationships](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSREL)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart model.listLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add bibl corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change licence sourceDesc  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation occupation  **textstructure:** argument back body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc head p  **namesdates:** listRelation relation |
| **Note** | May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of <relation> elements. |
| **Example** | <**listPerson**>  <**person** **xml:id**="pp1"> <!-- data about person pp1 -->  </**person**>  <**person** **xml:id**="pp2"> <!-- data about person pp1 -->  </**person**> <!-- more person (pp3, pp4) elements here -->  <**listRelation** **type**="personal">   <**relation** **active**="#pp1 #pp2"    **name**="parent" **passive**="#pp3 #pp4"/>   <**relation** **mutual**="#pp1 #pp2"    **name**="spouse"/>  </**listRelation**>  <**listRelation** **type**="social">   <**relation** **active**="#pp1" **name**="employer"    **passive**="#pp3 #pp5 #pp6 #pp7"/>  </**listRelation**> </**listPerson**>  The persons with identifiers pp1 and pp2 are the parents of pp3 and pp4; they are also married to each other; pp1 is the employer of pp3, pp5, pp6, and pp7. |
| **Example** | <**listPerson**>  <**person** **xml:id**="en\_pp1"> <!-- data about person en\_pp1 -->  </**person**>  <**person** **xml:id**="en\_pp2"> <!-- data about person en\_pp2 -->  </**person**> <!-- more person (en\_pp3, en\_pp4) elements here --> </**listPerson**> <**listPlace**>  <**place** **xml:id**="en\_pl1"> <!-- data about place en\_pl1 -->  </**place**> <!-- more place (en\_pl2, en\_pl3) elements here --> </**listPlace**> <**listRelation**>  <**relation** **active**="#en\_pp1 #en\_pp2"   **name**="residence" **passive**="#en\_pl1"/> </**listRelation**>  The persons with identifiers en\_pp1 and en\_pp2 live in en\_pl1. |
| **Example** | <**listRelation**>  <**p**>All speakers are members of the Ceruli family, born in Naples.</**p**> </**listRelation**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="desc"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <elementRef key="relation"/>     <elementRef key="listRelation"/>    </alternate>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listRelation {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  ( [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*, [desc](#TEI.desc)\*, ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike) | ( [relation](#TEI.relation) | [listRelation](#TEI.listRelation) )+ ) ) } |

* + 1. <location>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<location>** defines the location of a place as a set of geographical coordinates, in terms of other named geo-political entities, or as an address. [[13.3.4. Places](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDGEOG)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) |
| **Member of** | model.placeStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **certainty:** precision  **core:** address bibl desc label listBibl note num  **namesdates:** affiliation bloc country district geo geogFeat geogName offset placeName region settlement |
| **Example** | <**place**>  <**placeName**>Abbey Dore</**placeName**>  <**location**>   <**geo**>51.969604 -2.893146</**geo**>  </**location**> </**place**> |
| **Example** | <**place** **type**="building" **xml:id**="BGbuilding">  <**placeName**>Brasserie Georges</**placeName**>  <**location**>   <**country** **key**="FR"/>   <**settlement** **type**="city">Lyon</**settlement**>   <**district** **type**="arrondissement">IIème</**district**>   <**district** **type**="quartier">Perrache</**district**>   <**placeName** **type**="street">    <**num**>30</**num**>, Cours de Verdun</**placeName**>  </**location**> </**place**> |
| **Example** | <**place** **type**="imaginary">  <**placeName**>Atlantis</**placeName**>  <**location**>   <**offset**>beyond</**offset**>   <**placeName**>The Pillars of <**persName**>Hercules</**persName**>   </**placeName**>  </**location**> </**place**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <elementRef key="precision"/>   <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>   <classRef key="model.placeNamePart"/>   <classRef key="model.offsetLike"/>   <classRef key="model.measureLike"/>   <classRef key="model.addressLike"/>   <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>   <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element location {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  (  [precision](#TEI.precision) | [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike) | [model.placeNamePart](#TEI.model.placeNamePart) | [model.offsetLike](#TEI.model.offsetLike) | [model.measureLike](#TEI.model.measureLike) | [model.addressLike](#TEI.model.addressLike) | [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) )\* } |

* + 1. <mentioned>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<mentioned>** marks words or phrases mentioned, not used. [[3.3.3. Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | There is thus a  striking accentual difference between a verbal form like <**mentioned** **xml:id**="X234" **xml:lang**="el">eluthemen</**mentioned**> <**gloss** **target**="#X234">we were released,</**gloss**> accented on the second syllable of the  word, and its participial derivative  <**mentioned** **xml:id**="X235" **xml:lang**="el">lutheis</**mentioned**> <**gloss** **target**="#X235">released,</**gloss**> accented on the last. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element mentioned { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq) } |

* + 1. <milestone>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<milestone>** marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element. [[3.10.3. Milestone Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.milestoneUnit (@unit) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break) |
| **Member of** | model.milestoneLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list listBibl mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figure table  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName person personGrp persona placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | For this element, the global *@n* attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value unnumbered should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme, such as chapter or other headings, poem numbers or titles, etc.  The order in which <milestone> elements are given at a given point is not normally significant. |
| **Example** | <**milestone** **ed**="La" **n**="23" **unit**="Dreissiger"/>  ... <**milestone** **ed**="AV" **n**="24" **unit**="verse"/> ... |
| **Content model** | <content>  <empty/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element milestone {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.milestoneUnit.attributes](#TEI.att.milestoneUnit),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.edition.attributes](#TEI.att.edition),  [att.spanning.attributes](#TEI.att.spanning),  [att.breaking.attributes](#TEI.att.breaking),  empty } |

* + 1. <name>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<name>** (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. [[3.5.1. Referring Strings](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONARS)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike.agent |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp respStmt rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with <persName>, <placeName>, or <orgName>, when the TEI module for names and dates is included. |
| **Example** | <**name** **type**="person">Thomas Hoccleve</**name**> <**name** **type**="place">Villingaholt</**name**> <**name** **type**="org">Vetus Latina Institut</**name**> <**name** **ref**="#HOC001" **type**="person">Occleve</**name**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element name {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.personal.attributes](#TEI.att.personal),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <nameLink>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<nameLink>** (name link) contains a connecting phrase or link used within a name but not regarded as part of it, such as van der or of. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>Frederick</**forename**>  <**nameLink**>van der</**nameLink**>  <**surname**>Tronck</**surname**> </**persName**> |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>Alfred</**forename**>  <**nameLink**>de</**nameLink**>  <**surname**>Musset</**surname**> </**persName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element nameLink {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <nationality>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<nationality>** contains an informal description of a person's present or past nationality or citizenship. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **birth**  **naturalised**  **self-assigned** | | |
| **Contained by** | — |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**nationality** **key**="US" **notBefore**="1966"> Obtained US Citizenship in 1966</**nationality**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element nationality {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <note>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<note>** contains a note or annotation. [[3.8.1. Notes and Simple Annotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONONO) [2.2.6. The Notes Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD27) [3.11.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICON) [9.3.5.4. Notes within Entries](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DI.html#DITPNO)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.placement (@place) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **anchored** | indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.truthValue | | **Default** | true | | **Note** | In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. ‘page 218, lines 3–4’). The *@anchored* attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value true indicates that such an explicit location is indicated in the copy text; the value false indicates that the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the *@n* attribute. | | | **targetEnd** | points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | **Note** | This attribute is retained for backwards compatibility; it may be removed at a subsequent release of the Guidelines. The recommended way of pointing to a span of elements is by means of the range function of XPointer, as further described in [16.2.4.6. range()](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SATSRN). | | |
| **Member of** | model.noteLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp respStmt rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figure table  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence notesStmt principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc climate country death district education event faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality object objectName occupation offset org orgName persName person personGrp persona place placeName population region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":  And yet it is not only  in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the  painterly <**note** **place**="bottom" **resp**="#MDMH"  **type**="gloss">  <**term** **xml:lang**="de">Malerisch</**term**>. This word has, in the German, two  distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object,  the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid  confusion, they have been distinguished in English as <**mentioned**>picturesque</**mentioned**> and <**mentioned**>painterly</**mentioned**> respectively. </**note**> style of the  Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this  psychological significance.  <!-- elsewhere in the document --> <**respStmt** **xml:id**="MDMH">  <**resp**>translation from German to English</**resp**>  <**name**>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</**name**> </**respStmt**>  For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header. |
| **Example** | The global *@n* attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:  Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the  family during the second half of the eleventh century, <**note** **anchored**="true" **n**="126"> The  alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a reference to  Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </**note**> is well known from Geniza documents  published by Jacob Mann.  However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element note {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.placement.attributes](#TEI.att.placement),  [att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.att.pointing),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.written.attributes](#TEI.att.written),  attribute anchored { text }?,  attribute targetEnd { list { + } }?,  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |

* + 1. <notesStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<notesStmt>** (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description. [[2.2.6. The Notes Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD27) [2.2. The File Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** note relatedItem |
| **Note** | Information of different kinds should not be grouped together into the same note. |
| **Example** | <**notesStmt**>  <**note**>Historical commentary provided by Mark Cohen</**note**>  <**note**>OCR scanning done at University of Toronto</**note**> </**notesStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="1">   <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>   <elementRef key="relatedItem"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element notesStmt { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), ( [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [relatedItem](#TEI.relatedItem) )+ } |

* + 1. <num>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<num>** (number) contains a number, written in any form. [[3.5.3. Numbers and Measures](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONANU)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | indicates the type of numeric value.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Suggested values include:** | **cardinal** absolute number, e.g. 21, 21.5  **ordinal** ordinal number, e.g. 21st  **fraction** fraction, e.g. one half or three-quarters  **percentage** a percentage | | **Note** | If a different typology is desired, other values can be used for this attribute. | | | **value** | supplies the value of the number in standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.numeric | | **Values** | a numeric value. | | **Note** | The standard form used is defined by the TEI datatype data.numeric. | | |
| **Member of** | model.measureLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | Detailed analyses of quantities and units of measure in historical documents may also use the feature structure mechanism described in chapter [18. Feature Structures](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FS). The <num> element is intended for use in simple applications. |
| **Example** | <**p**>I reached <**num** **type**="cardinal" **value**="21">twenty-one</**num**> on  my <**num** **type**="ordinal" **value**="21">twenty-first</**num**> birthday</**p**> <**p**>Light travels at <**num** **value**="3E10">3×10<**hi** **rend**="sup">10</**hi**>  </**num**> cm per second.</**p**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element num {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.ranging.attributes](#TEI.att.ranging),  attribute type { "cardinal" | "ordinal" | "fraction" | "percentage" }?,  attribute value { text }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <nym>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<nym>** (canonical name) contains the definition for a canonical name or name component of any kind. [[13.3.6. Names and Nyms](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDNYM)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.sortable (@sortKey)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **parts** | points to constituent nyms   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** listNym nym |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **header:** idno  **namesdates:** nym |
| **Example** | <**nym** **xml:id**="J452">  <**form**>   <**orth** **xml:lang**="en-US">Ian</**orth**>   <**orth** **xml:lang**="en-x-Scots">Iain</**orth**>  </**form**> </**nym**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="idno"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.entryPart"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="nym"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element nym {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  attribute parts { list { + } }?,  ( [idno](#TEI.idno)\*, [model.entryPart](#TEI.model.entryPart)\*, [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)\*, [nym](#TEI.nym)\* ) } |

* + 1. <object>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<object>** contains a description of a single identifiable physical object. [[13.3.5. Objects](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDOBJ)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) att.docStatus (@status) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.objectLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** listObject object |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl head listBibl note p  **linking:** link  **namesdates:** object objectIdentifier |
| **Note** | The <object> element is a recent addition to the TEI P5 Guidelines as of version 3.5.0 and as such may be more prone to further revision in the next few releases as its use develops. This may be particularly evident where its contents have been borrowed from <msDesc> and have yet to be generalized from their use in the context of manuscript descriptions.  The <object> element may be used for describing any object, text-bearing or not, though where the textuality of the object is the primary concern or a collection is mostly composed of manuscripts, encoders may prefer the <msDesc> element (a more specific form of <object>) which may be used not only to describe manuscripts but any form of text-bearing objects such as early printed books. |
| **Example** | <**listObject**>  <**object** **xml:id**="Alfred\_Jewel">   <**objectIdentifier**>    <**country**>United Kingdom</**country**>    <**region**>Oxfordshire</**region**>    <**settlement**>Oxford</**settlement**>    <**institution**>University of Oxford</**institution**>    <**repository**>Ashmolean Museum</**repository**>    <**collection**>English Treasures</**collection**>    <**idno** **type**="ashmolean">AN1836p.135.371</**idno**>    <**idno** **type**="wikipedia">https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alfred\_Jewel</**idno**>    <**objectName**>Alfred Jewel</**objectName**>   </**objectIdentifier**>   <**physDesc**>    <**p**> The Alfred Jewel is about 6.4 cm in length and is made of combination of filigreed <**material**>gold</**material**>        surrounding a polished teardrop shaped piece of transparent <**material**>quartz</**material**>. Underneath the rock        crystal is a cloisonné enamel image of a man with ecclesiastical symbols. The sides of the jewel holding the        crystal in place contain an openwork inscription saying "AELFRED MEC HEHT GEWYRCAN", meaning 'Alfred ordered        me made'. </**p**>   </**physDesc**>   <**history**>    <**origin**>It is generally accepted that the Alfred Jewel dates from the <**origDate**>late 9th Century</**origDate**> and        was most likely made in <**origPlace**>England</**origPlace**>. </**origin**>    <**provenance** **when**="1693">The jewel was discovered in 1693 at Petherton Park, North Petherton in the English        county of Somerset, on land owned by Sir Thomas Wroth. North Petherton is about 8 miles away from Athelney,        where King Alfred founded a monastery. </**provenance**>    <**provenance** **when**="1698">A description of the Alfred Jewel was first published in 1698, in the Philosophical        Transactions of the Royal Society.</**provenance**>    <**acquisition**> It was bequeathed to Oxford University by Colonel Nathaniel Palmer (c. 1661-1718) and today is in        the Ashmolean Museum in Oxford. </**acquisition**>   </**history**>  </**object**> </**listObject**> <!-- Elsewhere in document --> <**p**> The <**objectName** **ref**="#MinsterLovellJewel">Minster Lovell Jewel</**objectName**> is probably the most similar to the <**objectName** **ref**="#Alfred\_Jewel">Alfred Jewel</**objectName**> and was found in <**placeName** **ref**="#MinsterLovell">Minster    Lovell</**placeName**> in <**placeName** **ref**="#Oxfordshire">Oxfordshire</**placeName**> and is kept at the <**orgName** **ref**="#AshmoleanMuseum">Ashmolean Museum</**orgName**>. </**p**> |
| **Example** | <**listObject**>  <**object** **xml:id**="MaskOfTutankhamun">   <**objectIdentifier**>    <**objectName** **xml:lang**="en">Mask of Tutankhamun</**objectName**>    <**idno** **type**="carter">256a</**idno**>    <**idno** **type**="JournalD'Entrée">60672</**idno**>    <**idno** **type**="exhibition">220</**idno**>    <**institution**>Museum of Egyptian Antiquities</**institution**>    <**address**>     <**street**>15 Meret Basha</**street**>     <**district**>Ismailia</**district**>     <**settlement**>Cairo</**settlement**>     <**country**>Egypt</**country**>     <**location**>      <**geo**>30.047778, 31.233333</**geo**>     </**location**>    </**address**>   </**objectIdentifier**>   <**msContents**>    <**p**>The back and shoulders of the mask is inscribed with a protective spell in Egyptian hieroglyphs formed of ten        vertical and horizontal lines. This spell first appeared on masks in the Middle Kingdom at least 500 years        before Tutankhamun, and comes from chapter 151 of the <**title**>Book of the Dead</**title**>.</**p**>   </**msContents**>   <**physDesc**>    <**p**> The mask of Tutankhamun is 54cm x 39.3cm x 49cm. It is constructed from two layers of high-karat gold that        varies in thickness from 1.5-3mm. It weighs approximately 10.23kg and x-ray crystallography shows that it is        composed of two alloys of gold with a lighter 18.4 karat shade being used for the face and neck while a heavier        22.5 karat gold was used for the rest of the mask.</**p**>    <**p**>In the mask Tutankhamun wears a nemes headcloth which has the royal insignia of a cobra (Wadjet) and vulture        (Nekhbet) on it. These are thought respectively to symbolise Tutankhamun's rule of both Lower Egypt and Upper        Egypt. His ears are pierced for earrings. The mask has rich inlays of coloured glass and gemstones, including        lapis lazuli surrounding the eye and eyebrows, quartz for the eyes, obsidian for the pupils. The broad collar is        made up of carnelian, feldspar, turquoise, amazonite, faience and other stones.</**p**>   </**physDesc**>   <**history**>    <**origin**>     <**p**>The mask of Tutankhamun was created in <**origPlace**>Egypt</**origPlace**> around <**origDate** **type**="circa" **when**="-1323">1323 BC</**origDate**>. It is a death mask of the 18th-dynasty ancient Egyptian Pharaoh Tutankhamun          who reigned 1332–1323 BC. </**p**>    </**origin**>    <**provenance**>     <**p**>The mask of Tutankhamun was found in his burial chamber at Theban Necropolis in the Valley of the Kings in          1922. On 28 October 1925 the excavation team led by English archaeologist Howard Carter opened the heavy          sarcophagus and three coffins and were the first people in around 3,250 years to see the mask of Tutankhamun.          Carter wrote in his diary: <**quote**> The pins removed, the lid was raised. The penultimate scene was disclosed –            a very neatly wrapped mummy of the young king, with golden mask of sad but tranquil expression, symbolizing            Osiris … the mask bears that god's attributes, but the likeness is that of Tut.Ankh.Amen – placid and            beautiful, with the same features as we find upon his statues and coffins. The mask has fallen slightly            back, thus its gaze is straight up to the heavens. </**quote**>     </**p**>    </**provenance**>    <**acquisition**> In December 1925, the mask was removed from the tomb, placed in a crate and transported 635        kilometres (395 mi) to the Egyptian Museum in Cairo, where it remains on public display. </**acquisition**>   </**history**>   <**additional**>    <**adminInfo**>     <**custodialHist**>      <**custEvent** **when**="1944">When it was discovered in 1925, the 2.5kg narrow gold beard was no longer attached to            the mask and was reattached to the chin by use of a wooden dowel in 1944.</**custEvent**>      <**custEvent** **when**="2014-08"> In August 2014 when the mask was removed from its display case for cleaning, the            beard fell off again. Those working in the museum unadvisedly used a quick-drying epoxy to attempt to fix            it, but left the beard off-centre. </**custEvent**>      <**custEvent** **when**="2015-01">The damage was noticed and repaired in January 2015 by a German-Egyptian team who            used beeswax, a material known to be used as adhesives by the ancient Egyptians.</**custEvent**>     </**custodialHist**>    </**adminInfo**>   </**additional**>  </**object**> </**listObject**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="objectIdentifier"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.pLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>    <sequence>     <elementRef key="msContents"      minOccurs="0"/>     <elementRef key="physDesc"      minOccurs="0"/>     <elementRef key="history" minOccurs="0"/>     <elementRef key="additional"      minOccurs="0"/>    </sequence>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>    <elementRef key="link"/>   </alternate>   <elementRef key="object" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element object {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  [att.docStatus.attributes](#TEI.att.docStatus),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  (  [objectIdentifier](#TEI.objectIdentifier)+,  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)\* | ( [msContents](#TEI.msContents)?, [physDesc](#TEI.physDesc)?, [history](#TEI.history)?, [additional](#TEI.additional)? ) ),  ( [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) | [linkGrp](#TEI.linkGrp) | [link](#TEI.link) )\*,  [object](#TEI.object)?  ) } |

* + 1. <objectIdentifier>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<objectIdentifier>** (object identifier) groups one or more identifiers or pieces of locating information concerning a single object. [[13.3.5. Objects](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDOBJ)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **namesdates:** object |
| **May contain** | **core:** address  **header:** idno  **namesdates:** bloc country district geogName objectName placeName region settlement |
| **Example** | <**objectIdentifier**>  <**country**>United Kingdom</**country**>  <**region**>Oxfordshire</**region**>  <**settlement**>Oxford</**settlement**>  <**institution**>University of Oxford</**institution**>  <**repository**>Ashmolean Museum</**repository**>  <**collection**>English Treasures</**collection**>  <**idno** **type**="ashmolean">AN1836p.135.371</**idno**>  <**idno** **type**="wikipedia">https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alfred\_Jewel</**idno**>  <**objectName**>Alfred Jewel</**objectName**> </**objectIdentifier**> |
| **Example** | <**object** **xml:id**="Excalibur-MultipleNames">  <**objectIdentifier**>   <**objectName** **type**="main">Excalibur</**objectName**>   <**objectName** **type**="alt">Caliburn</**objectName**>   <**objectName** **xml:lang**="cy">Caledfwlch</**objectName**>   <**objectName** **xml:lang**="cornu">Calesvol</**objectName**>   <**objectName** **xml:lang**="br">Kaledvoulc'h</**objectName**>   <**objectName** **xml:lang**="la">Caliburnus</**objectName**>   <**country**>Wales</**country**>  </**objectIdentifier**>  <**p**>Excalibur is the name for the legendary sword of King Arthur, in Welsh it is called Caledfwlch,    in Cornish it is called Calesvol, in Breton it is called Kaledvoulc'h, and in Latin it is called Caliburnus.    In some versions Excalibur's blade was engraved with phrases on opposite sides which in translation read:    "Take me up" and "Cast me away" (or similar).</**p**> </**object**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="not(count(\*) gt 0)">An objectIdentifier must contain at minimum a single piece of locating or identifying information.</s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <classRef key="model.placeNamePart"/>   <elementRef key="institution"/>   <elementRef key="repository"/>   <elementRef key="collection"/>   <elementRef key="idno"/>   <elementRef key="msName"/>   <elementRef key="objectName"/>   <elementRef key="altIdentifier"/>   <elementRef key="address"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element objectIdentifier {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  (  [model.placeNamePart](#TEI.model.placeNamePart) | [institution](#TEI.institution) | [repository](#TEI.repository) | [collection](#TEI.collection) | [idno](#TEI.idno) | [msName](#TEI.msName) | [objectName](#TEI.objectName) | [altIdentifier](#TEI.altIdentifier) | [address](#TEI.address) )\* } |

* + 1. <objectName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<objectName>** (name of an object) contains a proper noun or noun phrase used to refer to an object. [[13.2.4. Object Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDOBJN)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**p**>   The <**objectName** **ref**="#MinsterLovellJewel">Minster Lovell Jewel</**objectName**> is probably the most similar to the <**objectName** **ref**="#AlfredJewel">Alfred Jewel</**objectName**> and was found in <**placeName** **ref**="#MinsterLovell">Minster    Lovell</**placeName**> in <**placeName** **ref**="#Oxfordshire">Oxfordshire</**placeName**> and is kept at the <**orgName** **ref**="#AshmoleanMuseum">Ashmolean Museum</**orgName**>. </**p**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element objectName {  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.personal.attributes](#TEI.att.personal),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <occupation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<occupation>** contains an informal description of a person's trade, profession or occupation. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **primary**  **other**  **paid**  **unpaid** | | | **scheme** | indicates the classification system or taxonomy in use, for example by supplying the identifier of a <taxonomy> element, or pointing to some other resource.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | | **code** | identifies an occupation code defined within the classification system or taxonomy defined by the *@scheme* attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | |
| **Contained by** | — |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | The content of this element may be used as an alternative to the more formal specification made possible by its attributes; it may also be used to supplement the formal specification with commentary or clarification. |
| **Example** | <**occupation**>accountant</**occupation**> |
| **Example** | <**occupation** **code**="#acc"  **scheme**="#occupationtaxonomy">accountant</**occupation**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element occupation {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  attribute scheme { text }?,  attribute code { text }?,  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |

* + 1. <offset>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<offset>** marks that part of a relative temporal or spatial expression which indicates the direction of the offset between the two place names, dates, or times involved in the expression. [[13.2.3. Place Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) |
| **Member of** | model.offsetLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**placeName** **key**="NRPA1">  <**offset**>50 metres below the summit of</**offset**>  <**geogName**>   <**geogFeat**>Mount</**geogFeat**>   <**name**>Sinai</**name**>  </**geogName**> </**placeName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element offset {  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.att.dimensions),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <opener>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<opener>** groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter. [[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.divTopPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **textstructure:** body div group postscript |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  **textstructure:** argument byline dateline epigraph salute signed  character data |
| **Example** | <**opener**>  <**dateline**>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</**dateline**> </**opener**> |
| **Example** | <**opener**>  <**dateline**>   <**name** **type**="place">Great Marlborough Street</**name**>   <**date**>November 11, 1848</**date**>  </**dateline**>  <**salute**>My dear Sir,</**salute**> </**opener**> <**p**>I am sorry to say that absence from town and other circumstances have prevented me from  earlier enquiring...</**p**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <elementRef key="argument"/>   <elementRef key="byline"/>   <elementRef key="dateline"/>   <elementRef key="epigraph"/>   <elementRef key="salute"/>   <elementRef key="signed"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element opener {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.written.attributes](#TEI.att.written),  (  text  | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [argument](#TEI.argument) | [byline](#TEI.byline) | [dateline](#TEI.dateline) | [epigraph](#TEI.epigraph) | [salute](#TEI.salute) | [signed](#TEI.signed) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |

* + 1. <org>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<org>** (organization) provides information about an identifiable organization such as a business, a tribe, or any other grouping of people. [[13.2.2. Organizational Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDORG)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.sortable (@sortKey)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **role** | specifies a primary role or classification for the organization.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, familyGroup, or politicalParty, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <desc> for each <valItem> element in the schema specification of the project's customization. | | |
| **Member of** | model.personLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** listOrg listPerson org |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl desc head label lb listBibl milestone name note p pb ptr rs  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link  **namesdates:** addName bloc climate country district event forename genName geogFeat geogName listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink objectName offset org orgName persName person personGrp place placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait |
| **Example** | <**org** **xml:id**="JAMs">  <**orgName**>Justified Ancients of Mummu</**orgName**>  <**desc**>An underground anarchist collective spearheaded by <**persName**>Hagbard      Celine</**persName**>, who fight the Illuminati from a golden submarine, the  <**name**>Leif Ericson</**name**>  </**desc**>  <**bibl**>   <**author**>Robert Shea</**author**>   <**author**>Robert Anton Wilson</**author**>   <**title**>The Illuminatus! Trilogy</**title**>  </**bibl**> </**org**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.pLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>     <classRef key="model.nameLike"/>     <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>     <classRef key="model.orgPart"/>     <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/>    </alternate>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>    <elementRef key="link"/>    <elementRef key="ptr"/>   </alternate>   <classRef key="model.personLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element org {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  attribute role { list { + } }?,  (  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  (  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)\*  | (  [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike) | [model.nameLike](#TEI.model.nameLike) | [model.placeLike](#TEI.model.placeLike) | [model.orgPart](#TEI.model.orgPart) | [model.milestoneLike](#TEI.model.milestoneLike) )\*  ),  ( [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) | [linkGrp](#TEI.linkGrp) | [link](#TEI.link) | [ptr](#TEI.ptr) )\*,  [model.personLike](#TEI.model.personLike)\*  ) } |

* + 1. <orgName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<orgName>** (organization name) contains an organizational name. [[13.2.2. Organizational Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDORG)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike.agent |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp respStmt rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | About a year back, a question of considerable interest was agitated in the <**orgName** **key**="PAS1" **type**="voluntary">  <**placeName** **key**="PEN">Pennsyla.</**placeName**> Abolition Society </**orgName**> [...] |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element orgName {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.personal.attributes](#TEI.att.personal),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <orig>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<orig>** (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected. [[3.4.2. Regularization and Normalization](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDREG) [12. Critical Apparatus](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TC.html#TC)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change distributor edition extent licence  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text, <orig> may be used alone:  <**l**>But this will be a <**orig**>meere</**orig**> confusion</**l**> <**l**>And hardly shall we all be <**orig**>vnderstoode</**orig**> </**l**> |
| **Example** | More usually, an <orig> will be combined with a regularized form within a <choice> element:  <**l**>But this will be a <**choice**>   <**orig**>meere</**orig**>   <**reg**>mere</**reg**>  </**choice**> confusion</**l**> <**l**>And hardly shall we all be <**choice**>   <**orig**>vnderstoode</**orig**>   <**reg**>understood</**reg**>  </**choice**> </**l**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element orig { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent) } |

* + 1. <p>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<p>** (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [[3.1. Paragraphs](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COPA) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.fragmentable (@part) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.pLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** item note q sp stage  **figures:** cell figure  **header:** availability change editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc langUsage licence projectDesc publicationStmt refsDecl samplingDecl seriesStmt sourceDesc  **namesdates:** climate event langKnowledge listRelation nym object occupation org person personGrp persona place population state terrain trait  **textstructure:** argument back body div epigraph front postscript |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**p**>Hallgerd was outside. <**q**>There is blood on your axe,</**q**> she said. <**q**>What have you    done?</**q**> </**p**> <**p**>  <**q**>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</**q**> replied Thjostolf. </**p**> <**p**>  <**q**>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</**q**> she said. </**p**> <**p**>  <**q**>Yes,</**q**> said Thjostolf. <**q**>And now you must think up some plan for me.</**q**> </**p**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="not(ancestor::tei:floatingText) and (ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(parent::tei:exemplum |parent::tei:item |parent::tei:note |parent::tei:q |parent::tei:quote |parent::tei:remarks |parent::tei:said |parent::tei:sp |parent::tei:stage |parent::tei:cell |parent::tei:figure )"> Abstract model violation: Paragraphs may not occur inside other paragraphs or ab elements. </s:report> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:p[. = current()])]"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, p, or ab. </s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element p {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  [att.fragmentable.attributes](#TEI.att.fragmentable),  [att.written.attributes](#TEI.att.written),  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |

* + 1. <pb>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<pb>** (page beginning) marks the beginning of a new page in a paginated document. [[3.10.3. Milestone Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break) |
| **Member of** | model.milestoneLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list listBibl mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figure table  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName person personGrp persona placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | A <pb> element should appear at the start of the page which it identifies. The global *@n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with this page. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the <pb> element itself.  The *@type* attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect. The more specialized attributes *@break*, *@ed*, or *@edRef* should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the page break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives. |
| **Example** | Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.  <**p**> ... <**pb** **ed**="ed2" **n**="145"/> <!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here --> ... <**pb** **ed**="ed1" **n**="283"/> <!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here--> ... </**p**> |
| **Example** | A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the *@facs* attribute  <**body**>  <**pb** **facs**="page1.png" **n**="1"/> <!-- page1.png contains an image of the page; the text it contains is encoded here -->  <**p**> <!-- ... -->  </**p**>  <**pb** **facs**="page2.png" **n**="2"/> <!-- similarly, for page 2 -->  <**p**> <!-- ... -->  </**p**> </**body**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <empty/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element pb {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.edition.attributes](#TEI.att.edition),  [att.spanning.attributes](#TEI.att.spanning),  [att.breaking.attributes](#TEI.att.breaking),  empty } |

* + 1. <pc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<pc>** (punctuation character) contains a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark. [[17.1.2. Below the Word Level](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AIPC) [17.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILALW)] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.linguistic (@lemma, @lemmaRef, @pos, @msd, @join)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **force** | indicates the extent to which this punctuation mark conventionally separates words or phrases   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **strong** the punctuation mark is a word separator  **weak** the punctuation mark is not a word separator  **inter** the punctuation mark may or may not be a word separator | | | **unit** | provides a name for the kind of unit delimited by this punctuation mark.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | | **pre** | indicates whether this punctuation mark precedes or follows the unit it delimits.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.truthValue | | |
| **Member of** | model.segLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change distributor edition extent licence  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **core:** abbr add choice corr del expan orig reg sic unclear  character data |
| **Example** | <**phr**>  <**w**>do</**w**>  <**w**>you</**w**>  <**w**>understand</**w**>  <**pc** **type**="interrogative">?</**pc**> </**phr**> |
| **Example** | Example encoding of the German sentence Wir fahren in den Urlaub., encoded with attributes from att.linguistic discussed in section <#AILALW>.  <**s**>  <**w** **msd**="1.Pl.\*.Nom" **pos**="PPER">Wir</**w**>  <**w** **msd**="1.Pl.Pres.Ind" **pos**="VVFIN">fahren</**w**>  <**w** **msd**="--" **pos**="APPR">in</**w**>  <**w** **msd**="Def.Masc.Akk.Sg." **pos**="ART">den</**w**>  <**w** **msd**="Masc.Akk.Sg." **pos**="NN">Urlaub</**w**>  <**pc** **join**="left" **msd**="--" **pos**="$.">.</**pc**> </**s**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <elementRef key="c"/>   <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element pc {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.segLike.attributes](#TEI.att.segLike),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.linguistic.attributes](#TEI.att.linguistic),  attribute force { "strong" | "weak" | "inter" }?,  attribute unit { text }?,  attribute pre { text }?,  ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [c](#TEI.c) | [model.pPart.edit](#TEI.model.pPart.edit) )\* } |

* + 1. <persName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<persName>** (personal name) contains a proper noun or proper-noun phrase referring to a person, possibly including one or more of the person's forenames, surnames, honorifics, added names, etc. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike.agent |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp respStmt rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>Edward</**forename**>  <**forename**>George</**forename**>  <**surname** **type**="linked">Bulwer-Lytton</**surname**>, <**roleName**>Baron Lytton of  <**placeName**>Knebworth</**placeName**>  </**roleName**> </**persName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element persName {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.personal.attributes](#TEI.att.personal),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <person>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<person>** provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source. [[13.3.2. The Person Element](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSE) [15.2.2. The Participant Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.sortable (@sortKey)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **role** | specifies a primary role or classification for the person.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, author, relative, or servant, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification. | | | **sex** | specifies the sex of the person.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.sex separated by whitespace | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property <http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats> (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 *Representation of Human Sexes*<http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip> (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People*<http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection>. | | | **age** | specifies an age group for the person.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as infant, child, teen, adult, or senior, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification. | | |
| **Member of** | model.personLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** listPerson org |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** gap index lb milestone note p pb ptr  **figures:** figure  **linking:** anchor link |
| **Note** | May contain either a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of more specific demographic elements drawn from the model.personPart class. |
| **Example** | <**person** **age**="adult" **sex**="F">  <**p**>Female respondent, well-educated, born in Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation. Speaks French fluently. Socio-Economic    status B2.</**p**> </**person**> |
| **Example** | <**person** **age**="immortal" **role**="god"  **sex**="intersex">  <**persName**>Hermaphroditos</**persName**>  <**persName** **xml:lang**="grc">Ἑρμαφρόδιτος</**persName**> </**person**> |
| **Example** | <**person** **role**="poet" **sex**="1" **xml:id**="Ovi01">  <**persName** **xml:lang**="en">Ovid</**persName**>  <**persName** **xml:lang**="la">Publius Ovidius Naso</**persName**>  <**birth** **when**="-0044-03-20"> 20 March 43 BC <**placeName**>    <**settlement** **type**="city">Sulmona</**settlement**>    <**country** **key**="IT">Italy</**country**>   </**placeName**>  </**birth**>  <**death** **notAfter**="0018" **notBefore**="0017">17 or 18 AD <**placeName**>    <**settlement** **type**="city">Tomis (Constanta)</**settlement**>    <**country** **key**="RO">Romania</**country**>   </**placeName**>  </**death**> </**person**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.personPart"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>    <elementRef key="ptr"/>   </alternate>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element person {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  attribute role { list { + } }?,  attribute sex { list { + } }?,  attribute age { text }?,  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | ( [model.personPart](#TEI.model.personPart) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [ptr](#TEI.ptr) )\* ) } |

* + 1. <personGrp>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<personGrp>** (personal group) describes a group of individuals treated as a single person for analytic purposes. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **role** | specifies the role of this group of participants in the interaction.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as movement, employers, relatives, or servants, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification. | | | **sex** | specifies the sex of the participant group.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.sex separated by whitespace | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property <http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats> (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 *Representation of Human Sexes*<http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip> (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People*<http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection>. For a mixed group, a value such as "mixed" may also be supplied. | | | **age** | specifies the age group of the participants.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as infant, child, teen, adult, or senior, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification. | | | **size** | describes informally the size or approximate size of the group for example by means of a number and an indication of accuracy e.g. approx 200.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | |
| **Member of** | model.personLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** listPerson org |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** gap index lb milestone note p pb  **figures:** figure  **linking:** anchor link |
| **Note** | May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or any sequence of demographic elements in any combination.  The global *@xml:id* attribute should be used to identify each speaking participant in a spoken text if the *@who* attribute is specified on individual utterances. |
| **Example** | <**personGrp** **role**="audience" **sex**="mixed"  **size**="approx 50" **xml:id**="pg1"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.personPart"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element personGrp {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  attribute role { text }?,  attribute sex { list { + } }?,  attribute age { text }?,  attribute size { list { + } }?,  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | ( [model.personPart](#TEI.model.personPart) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* ) } |

* + 1. <persona>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<persona>** provides information about one of the personalities identified for a given individual, where an individual has multiple personalities. [[13.3.2. The Person Element](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSE)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.sortable (@sortKey)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **role** | specifies a primary role or classification for the persona.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, author, relative, or servant, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification. | | | **sex** | specifies the sex of the persona.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.sex separated by whitespace | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property <http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats> (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 *Representation of Human Sexes*<http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip> (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People*<http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection>. | | | **age** | specifies an age group for the persona.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as infant, child, teen, adult, or senior, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification. | | |
| **Contained by** | — |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** gap index lb milestone note p pb  **figures:** figure  **linking:** anchor link |
| **Note** | Note that a persona is not the same as a role. A role may be assumed by different people on different occasions, whereas a persona is unique to a particular person, even though it may resemble others. Similarly, when an actor takes on or enacts the role of a historical person, they do not thereby acquire a new persona. |
| **Example** | <**person** **age**="adult" **sex**="M">  <**persona** **sex**="M">   <**persName**>Dr Henry Jekyll</**persName**>  </**persona**>  <**persona** **age**="youth" **sex**="M">   <**persName**>Edward Hyde</**persName**>  </**persona**> </**person**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.personPart"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element persona {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  attribute role { list { + } }?,  attribute sex { list { + } }?,  attribute age { text }?,  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | ( [model.personPart](#TEI.model.personPart) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* ) } |

* + 1. <place>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<place>** contains data about a geographic location [[13.3.4. Places](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDGEOG)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Member of** | model.placeLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** listPlace org place |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl desc head label listBibl note p ptr  **header:** idno  **linking:** link  **namesdates:** bloc climate country district event geogName listEvent listPlace location place placeName population region settlement state terrain trait |
| **Example** | <**place**>  <**country**>Lithuania</**country**>  <**country** **xml:lang**="lt">Lietuva</**country**>  <**place**>   <**settlement**>Vilnius</**settlement**>  </**place**>  <**place**>   <**settlement**>Kaunas</**settlement**>  </**place**> </**place**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.pLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>     <classRef key="model.placeStateLike"/>     <classRef key="model.eventLike"/>    </alternate>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    <elementRef key="idno"/>    <elementRef key="ptr"/>    <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>    <elementRef key="link"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>    <elementRef key="listPlace"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element place {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  (  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  (  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)\*  | ( [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike) | [model.placeStateLike](#TEI.model.placeStateLike) | [model.eventLike](#TEI.model.eventLike) )\*  ),  ( [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) | [idno](#TEI.idno) | [ptr](#TEI.ptr) | [linkGrp](#TEI.linkGrp) | [link](#TEI.link) )\*,  ( [model.placeLike](#TEI.model.placeLike) | [listPlace](#TEI.listPlace) )\*  ) } |

* + 1. <placeName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<placeName>** contains an absolute or relative place name. [[13.2.3. Place Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**settlement**>Rochester</**settlement**>  <**region**>New York</**region**> </**placeName**> |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**geogName**>Arrochar Alps</**geogName**>  <**region**>Argylshire</**region**> </**placeName**> |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**measure**>10 miles</**measure**>  <**offset**>Northeast of</**offset**>  <**settlement**>Attica</**settlement**> </**placeName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element placeName {  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.personal.attributes](#TEI.att.personal),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <population>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<population>** contains information about the population of a place. [[13.3.4.3. States, Traits, and Events](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDGEOGste)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName population region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **certainty:** precision  **core:** bibl desc head label listBibl note p  **namesdates:** population |
| **Example** | <**population** **resp**="#UKCensus" **when**="2001-04">  <**population** **type**="white">   <**desc**>54153898</**desc**>  </**population**>  <**population** **type**="asian">   <**desc**>11811423</**desc**>  </**population**>  <**population** **type**="black">   <**desc**>1148738</**desc**>  </**population**>  <**population** **type**="mixed">   <**desc**>677117</**desc**>  </**population**>  <**population** **type**="chinese">   <**desc**>247403</**desc**>  </**population**>  <**population** **type**="other">   <**desc**>230615</**desc**>  </**population**> </**population**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="precision"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <alternate>     <classRef key="model.pLike"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>     <classRef key="model.labelLike"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    </alternate>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>     <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>   <elementRef key="population"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element population {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.att.dimensions),  (  [precision](#TEI.precision)\*,  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  (  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike)+ ),  ( [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) )\*  )?,  [population](#TEI.population)\*  ) } |

* + 1. <postscript>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<postscript>** contains a postscript, e.g. to a letter. [[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.divBottomPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **figures:** figure table  **textstructure:** back body div front group postscript |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** bibl cit desc gap head index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage  **figures:** figure table  **linking:** anchor link  **namesdates:** listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** closer opener postscript signed trailer |
| **Example** | <**div** **type**="letter">  <**opener**>   <**dateline**>    <**placeName**>Rimaone</**placeName**>    <**date** **when**="2006-11-21">21 Nov 06</**date**>   </**dateline**>   <**salute**>Dear Susan,</**salute**>  </**opener**>  <**p**>Thank you very much for the assistance splitting those    logs. I'm sorry about the misunderstanding as to the size of    the task. I really was not asking for help, only to borrow the    axe. Hope you had fun in any case.</**p**>  <**closer**>   <**salute**>Sincerely yours,</**salute**>   <**signed**>Seymour</**signed**>  </**closer**>  <**postscript**>   <**label**>P.S.</**label**>   <**p**>The collision occured on <**date** **when**="2001-07-06">06 Jul 01</**date**>.</**p**>  </**postscript**> </**div**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.global"/>    <classRef key="model.divTopPart"/>   </alternate>   <classRef key="model.common"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.global"/>    <classRef key="model.common"/>   </alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element postscript {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.written.attributes](#TEI.att.written),  (  ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.divTopPart](#TEI.model.divTopPart) )\*,  [model.common](#TEI.model.common),  ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.common](#TEI.model.common) )\*,  ( [model.divBottomPart](#TEI.model.divBottomPart), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )\*  ) } |

* + 1. <precision>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<precision>** indicates the numerical accuracy or precision associated with some aspect of the text markup. [[21.2. Indications of Precision](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CE.html#CEPREC)] | |
| **Module** | certainty |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.scoping (@target, @match) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **precision** | characterizes the precision of the element or attribute pointed to by the <precision> element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.certainty | | | **stdDeviation** | supplies a standard deviation associated with the value in question   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.numeric | | |
| **Member of** | model.certLike model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** interp s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expan foreign gap gloss head hi item l label lg list mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figure table  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc climate country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnowledge langKnown location nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp persona placeName population region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** desc |
| **Example** | <**date** **notAfter**="0064" **notBefore**="0014"  **xml:id**="date001">Within about 50  years of the death of Augustus</**date**> <**precision** **match**="@notBefore"  **precision**="high" **target**="#date001"/> <**precision** **match**="@notAfter"  **precision**="low" **target**="#date001"/> |
| **Example** | <**date** **notAfter**="1642" **notBefore**="1632">Not more than ten years before the start of the Civil War <**precision** **match**="@notBefore"   **precision**="low"/>  <**precision** **match**="@notAfter"   **precision**="high"/> </**date**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <classRef key="model.descLike"/>   <classRef key="model.certLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element precision {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.scoping.attributes](#TEI.att.scoping),  [att.ranging.attributes](#TEI.att.ranging),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  attribute precision { text }?,  attribute stdDeviation { text }?,  ( [model.descLike](#TEI.model.descLike) | [model.certLike](#TEI.model.certLike) )\* } |

* + 1. <principal>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<principal>** (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text. [[2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **header:** editionStmt titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **figures:** figure  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**principal** **ref**="http://viaf.org/viaf/105517912">Gary Taylor</**principal**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element principal {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

* + 1. <profileDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<profileDesc>** (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. [[2.4. The Profile Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4) [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.teiHeaderPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **header:** creation langUsage textClass |
| **Note** | Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of <profileDesc> unless these are documenting multiple texts. |
| **Example** | <**profileDesc**>  <**langUsage**>   <**language** **ident**="fr">French</**language**>  </**langUsage**>  <**textDesc** **n**="novel">   <**channel** **mode**="w">print; part issues</**channel**>   <**constitution** **type**="single"/>   <**derivation** **type**="original"/>   <**domain** **type**="art"/>   <**factuality** **type**="fiction"/>   <**interaction** **type**="none"/>   <**preparedness** **type**="prepared"/>   <**purpose** **degree**="high" **type**="entertain"/>   <**purpose** **degree**="medium" **type**="inform"/>  </**textDesc**>  <**settingDesc**>   <**setting**>    <**name**>Paris, France</**name**>    <**time**>Late 19th century</**time**>   </**setting**>  </**settingDesc**> </**profileDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.profileDescPart"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element profileDesc { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [model.profileDescPart](#TEI.model.profileDescPart)\* } |

* + 1. <projectDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<projectDesc>** (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected. [[2.3.1. The Project Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD51) [2.3. The Encoding Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p |
| **Example** | <**projectDesc**>  <**p**>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990</**p**> </**projectDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element projectDesc {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ } |

* + 1. <ptr>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<ptr>** (pointer) defines a pointer to another location. [[3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COXR) [16.1. Links](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAPT)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) att.cReferencing (@cRef) |
| **Member of** | model.ptrLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cit corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg relatedItem resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal publicationStmt sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education event faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName person place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Example** | <**ptr** **target**="#p143 #p144"/> <**ptr** **target**="http://www.tei-c.org"/> <**ptr** **cRef**="1.3.4"/> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target and @cRef may be supplied on <s:name/>.</s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <empty/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element ptr {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.att.pointing),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  [att.cReferencing.attributes](#TEI.att.cReferencing),  empty } |

* + 1. <pubPlace>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<pubPlace>** (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [[3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) |
| **Member of** | model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **header:** publicationStmt  **textstructure:** docImprint |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**publicationStmt**>  <**publisher**>Oxford University Press</**publisher**>  <**pubPlace**>Oxford</**pubPlace**>  <**date**>1989</**date**> </**publicationStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element pubPlace {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <publicationStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<publicationStmt>** (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) [2.2. The File Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date p ptr pubPlace publisher ref  **header:** authority availability distributor idno |
| **Note** | Where a publication statement contains several members of the model.publicationStmtPart.agency or model.publicationStmtPart.detail classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order. |
| **Example** | <**publicationStmt**>  <**publisher**>C. Muquardt </**publisher**>  <**pubPlace**>Bruxelles &amp; Leipzig</**pubPlace**>  <**date** **when**="1846"/> </**publicationStmt**> |
| **Example** | <**publicationStmt**>  <**publisher**>Chadwyck Healey</**publisher**>  <**pubPlace**>Cambridge</**pubPlace**>  <**availability**>   <**p**>Available under licence only</**p**>  </**availability**>  <**date** **when**="1992">1992</**date**> </**publicationStmt**> |
| **Example** | <**publicationStmt**>  <**publisher**>Zea Books</**publisher**>  <**pubPlace**>Lincoln, NE</**pubPlace**>  <**date**>2017</**date**>  <**availability**>   <**p**>This is an open access work licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International license.</**p**>  </**availability**>  <**ptr** **target**="http://digitalcommons.unl.edu/zeabook/55"/> </**publicationStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.agency"/>    <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.detail"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element publicationStmt {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  (  ( [model.publicationStmtPart.agency](#TEI.model.publicationStmtPart.agency), [model.publicationStmtPart.detail](#TEI.model.publicationStmtPart.detail)\* )+  | [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+  ) } |

* + 1. <publisher>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<publisher>** provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [[3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **header:** publicationStmt  **textstructure:** docImprint |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page |
| **Example** | <**imprint**>  <**pubPlace**>Oxford</**pubPlace**>  <**publisher**>Clarendon Press</**publisher**>  <**date**>1987</**date**> </**imprint**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element publisher {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <q>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<q>** (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used. [[3.3.3. Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.ascribed.directed (@toWhom) (att.ascribed (@who))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Suggested values include:** | **spoken** representation of speech  **thought** representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue  **written** quotation from a written source  **soCalled** authorial distance  **foreign**  **distinct** linguistically distinct  **term** technical term  **emph** rhetorically emphasized  **mentioned** refering to itself, not its normal referent | | |
| **Member of** | model.qLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author biblScope cit corr del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change distributor edition extent licence  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** argument body div docAuthor docDate docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, <q> may be thought of as syntactic sugar for <hi> with a value of *@rend* that indicates the use of such mechanisms as quotation marks. |
| **Example** | It is spelled <**q**>Tübingen</**q**> — to enter the  letter <**q**>u</**q**> with an umlaut hold down the <**q**>option</**q**> key and press  <**q**>0 0 f c</**q**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element q {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.ascribed.directed.attributes](#TEI.att.ascribed.directed),  attribute type  {  "spoken"  | "thought"  | "written"  | "soCalled"  | "foreign"  | "distinct"  | "term"  | "emph"  | "mentioned"  }?,  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |

* + 1. <ref>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<ref>** (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [[3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COXR) [16.1. Links](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAPT)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) att.cReferencing (@cRef) |
| **Member of** | model.ptrLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cit corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg relatedItem resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal publicationStmt sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | The *@target* and *@cRef* attributes are mutually exclusive. |
| **Example** | See especially <**ref** **target**="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2">the second  sentence</**ref**> |
| **Example** | See also <**ref** **target**="#locution">s.v. <**term**>locution</**term**> </**ref**>. |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target' and @cRef' may be supplied on <s:name/> </s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element ref {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.att.pointing),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  [att.cReferencing.attributes](#TEI.att.cReferencing),  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |

* + 1. <refsDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<refsDecl>** (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text. [[2.3.6.3. Milestone Method](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD54M) [2.3. The Encoding Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5) [2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD54)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p |
| **Example** | <**refsDecl**>  <**cRefPattern** **matchPattern**="([A-Za-z0-9]+) ([0-9]+):([0-9]+)"   **replacementPattern**="#xpath(//body/div[@n='$1']/div[$2]/div3[$3])"/> </**refsDecl**>  This example is a formal representation for the referencing scheme described informally in the following example. |
| **Example** | <**refsDecl**>  <**p**>References are made up by concatenating the value for the  <**att**>n</**att**> attribute on the highest level <**gi**>div</**gi**>    element, followed by a space, followed by the sequential    number of the next level <**gi**>div</**gi**> followed by a colon    followed by the sequential number of the next (and lowest)    level <**gi**>div</**gi**>.</**p**> </**refsDecl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <elementRef key="cRefPattern"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <elementRef key="refState"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element refsDecl {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | [cRefPattern](#TEI.cRefPattern)+ | [refState](#TEI.refState)+ ) } |

* + 1. <reg>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<reg>** (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense. [[3.4.2. Regularization and Normalization](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDREG) [12. Critical Apparatus](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TC.html#TC)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change distributor edition extent licence  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been regularized, <reg> may be used alone:  <**q**>Please <**reg**>knock</**reg**> if an <**reg**>answer</**reg**> is <**reg**>required</**reg**> </**q**> |
| **Example** | It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the regularization, and, using the <choice> and <orig> elements, to provide both the original and regularized readings:  <**q**>Please <**choice**>   <**reg** **resp**="#LB">knock</**reg**>   <**orig**>cnk</**orig**>  </**choice**> if an <**choice**>   <**reg**>answer</**reg**>   <**orig**>nsr</**orig**>  </**choice**> is <**choice**>   <**reg**>required</**reg**>   <**orig**>reqd</**orig**>  </**choice**> </**q**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element reg {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |

* + 1. <region>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<region>** contains the name of an administrative unit such as a state, province, or county, larger than a settlement, but smaller than a country. [[13.2.3. Place Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**region** **n**="IL" **type**="state">Illinois</**region**> </**placeName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element region {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <relatedItem>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<relatedItem>** contains or references some other bibliographic item which is related to the present one in some specified manner, for example as a constituent or alternative version of it. [[3.11.2.7. Related Items](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBIRI)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **target** | points to the related bibliographic element by means of an absolute or relative URI reference   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **header:** notesStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl listBibl ptr ref |
| **Note** | If the *@target* attribute is used to reference the related bibliographic item, the element must be empty. |
| **Example** | <**biblStruct**>  <**monogr**>   <**author**>Shirley, James</**author**>   <**title** **type**="main">The gentlemen of Venice</**title**>   <**imprint**>    <**pubPlace**>New York</**pubPlace**>    <**publisher**>Readex Microprint</**publisher**>    <**date**>1953</**date**>   </**imprint**>   <**extent**>1 microprint card, 23 x 15 cm.</**extent**>  </**monogr**>  <**series**>   <**title**>Three centuries of drama: English, 1642–1700</**title**>  </**series**>  <**relatedItem** **type**="otherForm">   <**biblStruct**>    <**monogr**>     <**author**>Shirley, James</**author**>     <**title** **type**="main">The gentlemen of Venice</**title**>     <**title** **type**="sub">a tragi-comedie presented at the private house in Salisbury          Court by Her Majesties servants</**title**>     <**imprint**>      <**pubPlace**>London</**pubPlace**>      <**publisher**>H. Moseley</**publisher**>      <**date**>1655</**date**>     </**imprint**>     <**extent**>78 p.</**extent**>    </**monogr**>   </**biblStruct**>  </**relatedItem**> </**biblStruct**> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:report test="@target and count( child::\* ) > 0">If the @target attribute on <sch:name/> is used, the relatedItem element must be empty</sch:report> <sch:assert test="@target or child::\*">A relatedItem element should have either a 'target' attribute or a child element to indicate the related bibliographic item</sch:assert> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate minOccurs="0">   <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>   <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element relatedItem {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute target { text }?,  ( [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) | [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) )? } |

* + 1. <relation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<relation>** (relationship) describes any kind of relationship or linkage amongst a specified group of places, events, persons, objects or other items. [[13.3.2.3. Personal Relationships](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSREL)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **name** | supplies a name for the kind of relationship of which this is an instance.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | | **active** | identifies the ‘active’ participants in a non-mutual relationship, or all the participants in a mutual one.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | | **mutual** | supplies a list of participants amongst all of whom the relationship holds equally.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | | **passive** | identifies the ‘passive’ participants in a non-mutual relationship.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | |
| **Contained by** | **core:** listBibl  **namesdates:** listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc |
| **Note** | Only one of the attributes *@active* and *@mutual* may be supplied; the attribute *@passive* may be supplied only if the attribute *@active* is supplied. Not all of these constraints can be enforced in all schema languages. |
| **Example** | <**relation** **active**="#p1" **name**="supervisor"  **passive**="#p2 #p3 #p4" **type**="social"/>  This indicates that the person with identifier p1 is supervisor of persons p2, p3, and p4. |
| **Example** | <**relation** **mutual**="#p2 #p3 #p4"  **name**="friends" **type**="personal"/>  This indicates that p2, p3, and p4 are all friends. |
| **Example** | <**relation** **active**="http://id.clarosnet.org/places/metamorphoses/place/italy-orvieto"  **name**="P89\_falls\_within"  **passive**="http://id.clarosnet.org/places/metamorphoses/country/IT" **type**="CRM"/>  This indicates that there is a relation, defined by CIDOC CRM, between two resources identified by URLs. |
| **Example** | <**relation** **active**="http://www.ancientwisdoms.ac.uk/cts/urn:cts:greekLit:tlg3017.Syno298.sawsGrc01:divedition.divsection1.o14.a107"  **passive**="http://data.perseus.org/citations/urn:cts:greekLit:tlg0031.tlg002.perseus-grc1:9.35"  **ref**="http://purl.org/saws/ontology#isVariantOf" **resp**="http://viaf.org/viaf/44335536/"/>  This example records a relationship, defined by the SAWS ontology, between a passage of text identified by a CTS URN, and a variant passage of text in the Perseus Digital Library, and assigns the identification of the relationship to a particular editor (all using resolvable URIs). |
| **Schematron** | <s:assert test="@ref or @key or @name">One of the attributes 'name', 'ref' or 'key' must be supplied</s:assert> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="@active and @mutual">Only one of the attributes @active and @mutual may be supplied</s:report> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="@passive and not(@active)">the attribute 'passive' may be supplied only if the attribute 'active' is supplied</s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element relation {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute name { text }?,  ( attribute active { list { + } }? | attribute mutual { list { + } }? ),  attribute passive { list { + } }?,  [desc](#TEI.desc)? } |

* + 1. <residence>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<residence>** describes a person's present or past places of residence. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **primary**  **secondary**  **temporary**  **permanent** | | |
| **Contained by** | — |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**residence**>Childhood in East Africa and long term resident of Glasgow, Scotland.</**residence**> |
| **Example** | <**residence** **notAfter**="1997">Mbeni estate, Dzukumura region, Matabele land</**residence**> <**residence** **notAfter**="1996" **notBefore**="1903">  <**placeName**>   <**settlement**>Glasgow</**settlement**>   <**region**>Scotland</**region**>  </**placeName**> </**residence**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element residence {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <resp>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<resp>** (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work. [[3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21) [2.2.2. The Edition Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD22) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** respStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **figures:** figure  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | The attribute *@ref*, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form by referring directly to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at <http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html> for bibliographic usage. |
| **Example** | <**respStmt**>  <**resp** **ref**="http://id.loc.gov/vocabulary/relators/com.html">compiler</**resp**>  <**name**>Edward Child</**name**> </**respStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element resp {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

* + 1. <respStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<respStmt>** (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. [[3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21) [2.2.2. The Edition Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD22) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **header:** editionStmt seriesStmt titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** name note resp  **namesdates:** orgName persName |
| **Example** | <**respStmt**>  <**resp**>transcribed from original ms</**resp**>  <**persName**>Claus Huitfeldt</**persName**> </**respStmt**> |
| **Example** | <**respStmt**>  <**resp**>converted to XML encoding</**resp**>  <**name**>Alan Morrison</**name**> </**respStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate>    <sequence>     <elementRef key="resp"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>     <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    </sequence>    <sequence>     <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>     <elementRef key="resp"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    </sequence>   </alternate>   <elementRef key="note"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element respStmt {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  (  ( ( [resp](#TEI.resp)+, [model.nameLike.agent](#TEI.model.nameLike.agent)+ ) | ( [model.nameLike.agent](#TEI.model.nameLike.agent)+, [resp](#TEI.resp)+ ) ),  [note](#TEI.note)\*  ) } |

* + 1. <respons>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<respons>** (responsibility) identifies the individual(s) responsible for some aspect of the content or markup of particular element(s). [[21.3. Attribution of Responsibility](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CE.html#CERESP)] | |
| **Module** | certainty |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.scoping (@target, @match)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **locus** | indicates the specific aspect of the encoding (markup or content) for which responsibility is being assigned.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace | | **Legal values are:** | **name** responsibility is being assigned concerning the name of the element or attribute used.  **start** responsibility is being assigned concerning the start of the element concerned.  **end** responsibility is being assigned concerning the end of the element concerned.  **location** responsibility is being assigned concerning the location of the element concerned.  **value** responsibility is being assigned concerning the content (for an element) or the value (for an attribute) | | |
| **Member of** | model.certLike model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** interp s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expan foreign gap gloss head hi item l label lg list mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figure table  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName person personGrp persona placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** desc |
| **Note** | The <respons> element is designed for cases in which fine-grained information about specific aspects of the markup of a text is desirable for whatever reason. Global responsibility for certain aspects of markup is usually more simply indicated in the TEI header, using the <respStmt> element within the title statement, edition statement, or change log. |
| **Example** | <**respons** **locus**="name location"  **resp**="#encoder1" **target**="#p1"/> <**respons** **locus**="value" **match**="@rend"  **resp**="#encoder2" **target**="#p2"/> <**list** **type**="encoders">  <**item** **xml:id**="encoder1"/>  <**item** **xml:id**="encoder2"/> </**list**> |
| **Example** | In this (partially fictional) example the entire document was transcribed and encoded by a single encoder, except for one passage which was transcribed and encoded by the proofreader.  <!-- in the <teiHeader>: --><**respStmt** **xml:id**="enc01">  <**name**>C. Colin Backslash</**name**>  <**resp**>transcription</**resp**>  <**resp**>encoding</**resp**> </**respStmt**> <**respStmt** **xml:id**="prf01">  <**name**>Erin Spelling</**name**>  <**resp**>proofreading</**resp**> </**respStmt**> <!-- in the <text>: --> <**p**>Θερινὴ τροπή <**lb**/>  <**foreign** **xml:id**="mp0a8" **xml:lang**="hbo"> ת  <**supplied** **reason**="undefined">קו</**supplied**>   <**unclear**>פ</**unclear**>    ת תמוז  </**foreign**> </**p**> <!-- elsewhere: --> <**respons** **locus**="name value" **resp**="#prf01"  **target**="#mp0a8"/> |
| **Example** | In this (partially fictional) example an initial encoder (‘across.dta’) encoded most of the document; a later encoder (‘rcapolung.ewo’) encoded a particular passage; and a third encoder (‘sbauman.emt’) fixed some of that encoding.  <!-- in the <teiHeader>: --><**respStmt** **xml:id**="enc03">  <**persName** **ref**="../contextual/persons.xml#across.dta"/>  <**resp**>encoding</**resp**> </**respStmt**> <!-- in the <text>: --> <**spGrp** **rend**="braced(atonce1)"  **xml:id**="sgrp05">  <**sp** **who**="#mo">   <**speaker** **rend**="align(left)slant(italic)">    <**persName**>Mor</**persName**>.</**speaker**>   <**p** **rend**="break(no)">So, so, so!</**p**>  </**sp**>  <**sp** **who**="#hg">   <**speaker** **rend**="align(left)slant(italic)">    <**persName**>Mr. H</**persName**>.</**speaker**>   <**p** **rend**="break(no)">What, without my Leave!</**p**>  </**sp**>  <**sp** **who**="#la">   <**speaker** **rend**="align(left)slant(italic)">    <**persName**>Lady D</**persName**>.</**speaker**>   <**p** **rend**="break(no)">Amazing!</**p**>  </**sp**> </**spGrp**> <**stage** **rend**="align(right)slant(italic)"  **type**="delivery" **xml:id**="atonce1">All together.</**stage**> <!-- anywhere: --> <**respons** **locus**="name"  **resp**="../contextual/persons.xml#rcapolung.ewo" **target**="sgrp05">  <**desc**>Ashley did not know what to do with this; I have decided it    best fits as a braced <**gi**>spGrp</**gi**>  </**desc**> </**respons**> <**respons** **locus**="value" **match**=".//@rend"  **resp**="../contextual/persons.xml#sbauman.emt" **target**="sgrp05">  <**desc**>fixed <**att**>rend</**att**> attributes</**desc**> </**respons**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <classRef key="model.descLike"/>   <classRef key="model.certLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element respons {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.scoping.attributes](#TEI.att.scoping),  attribute locus  {  list { ( "name" | "start" | "end" | "location" | "value" )+ }  },  ( [model.descLike](#TEI.model.descLike) | [model.certLike](#TEI.model.certLike) )\* } |

* + 1. <revisionDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<revisionDesc>** (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file. [[2.6. The Revision Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6) [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.docStatus (@status) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **core:** list  **header:** change |
| **Note** | If present on this element, the *@status* attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same attribute may appear on any <change> to record the status at the time of that change. Conventionally <change> elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list. |
| **Example** | <**revisionDesc** **status**="embargoed">  <**change** **when**="1991-11-11" **who**="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </**change**> </**revisionDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <elementRef key="list"/>   <elementRef key="listChange"/>   <elementRef key="change"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element revisionDesc {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.docStatus.attributes](#TEI.att.docStatus),  ( [list](#TEI.list) | [listChange](#TEI.listChange) | [change](#TEI.change)+ ) } |

* + 1. <roleName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<roleName>** contains a name component which indicates that the referent has a particular role or position in society, such as an official title or rank. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | A <roleName> may be distinguished from an <addName> by virtue of the fact that, like a title, it typically exists independently of its holder. |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>William</**forename**>  <**surname**>Poulteny</**surname**>  <**roleName**>Earl of Bath</**roleName**> </**persName**> |
| **Example** | <**p**>The <**roleName** **role**="#solicitor\_general">S.G.</**roleName**> is the only national public official,  including the Supreme Court justices, required by statute to be “learned in the law.”</**p**> |
| **Example** | <**p**>  <**persName** **ref**="#NJF">   <**roleName** **role**="#solicitor\_general">Solicitor General</**roleName**> Noel J. Francisco</**persName**>,  representing the administration, asserted in rebuttal that there was nothing to disavow (...) <**persName** **ref**="#NJF">Francisco</**persName**> had violated the scrupulous standard of candor about the facts and  the law that <**roleName** **role**="#solicitor\_general">S.G.s</**roleName**>, in Republican and Democratic administrations  alike, have repeatedly said they must honor. </**p**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element roleName {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.personal.attributes](#TEI.att.personal),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <row>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<row>** contains one row of a table. [[14.1.1. TEI Tables](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FT.html#FTTAB1)] | |
| **Module** | figures |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.tableDecoration (@role, @rows, @cols) |
| **Contained by** | **figures:** table |
| **May contain** | **figures:** cell |
| **Example** | <**row** **role**="data">  <**cell** **role**="label">Classics</**cell**>  <**cell**>Idle listless and unimproving</**cell**> </**row**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <elementRef key="cell"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element row { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [att.tableDecoration.attributes](#TEI.att.tableDecoration), [cell](#TEI.cell)+ } |

* + 1. <rs>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<rs>** (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER) [3.5.1. Referring Strings](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONARS)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**q**>My dear <**rs** **type**="person">Mr. Bennet</**rs**>, </**q**> said <**rs** **type**="person">his lady</**rs**>  to him one day,  <**q**>have you heard that <**rs** **type**="place">Netherfield Park</**rs**> is let at  last?</**q**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element rs {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <s>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<s>** (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text. [[17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILC) [8.4.1. Segmentation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSSASE)] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.notated (@notation) |
| **Member of** | model.segLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change distributor edition extent licence  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | The <s> element may be used to mark orthographic sentences, or any other segmentation of a text, provided that the segmentation is end-to-end, complete, and non-nesting. For segmentation which is partial or recursive, the <seg> should be used instead.  The *@type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of segmentation intended, according to any convenient typology. |
| **Example** | <**head**>  <**s**>A short affair</**s**> </**head**> <**s**>When are you leaving?</**s**> <**s**>Tomorrow.</**s**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="tei:s">You may not nest one s element within another: use seg instead</s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element s {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.segLike.attributes](#TEI.att.segLike),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.notated.attributes](#TEI.att.notated),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <salute>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<salute>** (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc. [[4.2.2. Openers and Closers](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSOC)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.divWrapper |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **figures:** figure table  **textstructure:** body closer div front group opener |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**salute**>To all courteous mindes, that will voutchsafe the readinge.</**salute**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element salute {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.written.attributes](#TEI.att.written),  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |

* + 1. <samplingDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<samplingDecl>** (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection. [[2.3.2. The Sampling Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD52) [2.3. The Encoding Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p |
| **Note** | This element records all information about systematic inclusion or omission of portions of the text, whether a reflection of sampling procedures in the pure sense or of systematic omission of material deemed either too difficult to transcribe or not of sufficient interest. |
| **Example** | <**samplingDecl**>  <**p**>Samples of up to 2000 words taken at random from the beginning, middle, or end of each    text identified as relevant by respondents.</**p**> </**samplingDecl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element samplingDecl {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ } |

* + 1. <seg>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<seg>** (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the ‘chunk’ level. [[16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASE) [6.2. Components of the Verse Line](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/VE.html#VESE) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand) att.notated (@notation) |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.segLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change distributor edition extent licence  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | The <seg> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any segments of the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined. Another use is to provide an identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element—i.e. to provide a target, or a part of a target, for a <ptr> or other similar element. |
| **Example** | <**seg**>When are you leaving?</**seg**> <**seg**>Tomorrow.</**seg**> |
| **Example** | <**s**>  <**seg** **rend**="caps" **type**="initial-cap">So father's only</**seg**> glory was the ballfield.  </**s**> |
| **Example** | <**seg** **type**="preamble">  <**seg**>Sigmund, <**seg** **type**="patronym">the son of Volsung</**seg**>, was a king in Frankish country.</**seg**>  <**seg**>Sinfiotli was the eldest of his sons ...</**seg**>  <**seg**>Borghild, Sigmund's wife, had a brother ... </**seg**> </**seg**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element seg {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.segLike.attributes](#TEI.att.segLike),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.written.attributes](#TEI.att.written),  [att.notated.attributes](#TEI.att.notated),  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |

* + 1. <seriesStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<seriesStmt>** (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. [[2.2.5. The Series Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26) [2.2. The File Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** biblScope editor p respStmt title  **header:** idno |
| **Example** | <**seriesStmt**>  <**title**>Machine-Readable Texts for the Study of Indian Literature</**title**>  <**respStmt**>   <**resp**>ed. by</**resp**>   <**name**>Jan Gonda</**name**>  </**respStmt**>  <**biblScope** **unit**="volume">1.2</**biblScope**>  <**idno** **type**="ISSN">0 345 6789</**idno**> </**seriesStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <sequence>    <elementRef key="title"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <elementRef key="editor"/>     <elementRef key="respStmt"/>    </alternate>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <elementRef key="idno"/>     <elementRef key="biblScope"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element seriesStmt {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | ( [title](#TEI.title)+, ( [editor](#TEI.editor) | [respStmt](#TEI.respStmt) )\*, ( [idno](#TEI.idno) | [biblScope](#TEI.biblScope) )\* ) ) } |

* + 1. <settlement>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<settlement>** contains the name of a settlement such as a city, town, or village identified as a single geo-political or administrative unit. [[13.2.3. Place Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**settlement** **type**="town">Glasgow</**settlement**>  <**region**>Scotland</**region**> </**placeName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element settlement {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <sex>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<sex>** specifies the sex of a person. [[13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSEpc)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **explicit**  **implicit** | | | **value** | supplies a coded value for sex   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.sex separated by whitespace | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property <http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats> (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 *Representation of Human Sexes*<http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip> (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People*<http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection>. | | |
| **Contained by** | — |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | As with other culturally-constructed traits such as age, the way in which this concept is described in different cultural contexts may vary. The normalizing attributes are provided only as an optional means of simplifying that variety to one or more external standards for purposes of interoperability, or project-internal taxonomies for consistency, and should not be used where that is inappropriate or unhelpful. The content of the element may be used to describe the intended concept in more detail, using plain text. |
| **Example** | <**sex** **value**="M">male</**sex**> |
| **Example** | <**sex** **value**="2">female</**sex**> |
| **Example** | <**sex** **value**="I">Intersex</**sex**> |
| **Example** | <**sex** **value**="TG F">Female (TransWoman)</**sex**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element sex {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  attribute value { list { + } }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <sic>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<sic>** (Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate. [[3.4.1. Apparent Errors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDCOR)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change distributor edition extent licence  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | for his nose was as sharp as  a pen, and <**sic**>a Table</**sic**> of green fields. |
| **Example** | If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, <sic> may be used alone:  I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now  — how <**sic**>we can</**sic**> prove or disprove anyone's theories? |
| **Example** | It is also possible, using the <choice> and <corr> elements, to provide a corrected reading:  I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now  — how <**choice**>  <**sic**>we can</**sic**>  <**corr**>can we</**corr**> </**choice**> prove or disprove anyone's theories? |
| **Example** | for his nose was as sharp as  a pen, and <**choice**>  <**sic**>a Table</**sic**>  <**corr**>a' babbld</**corr**> </**choice**> of green fields. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element sic { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent) } |

* + 1. <signed>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<signed>** (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text. [[4.2.2. Openers and Closers](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSOC)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.divBottomPart model.divTopPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **figures:** figure table  **textstructure:** back body closer div front group opener postscript |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**signed**>Thine to command <**name**>Humph. Moseley</**name**> </**signed**> |
| **Example** | <**closer**>  <**signed**>Sign'd and Seal'd,  <**list**>    <**item**>John Bull,</**item**>    <**item**>Nic. Frog.</**item**>   </**list**>  </**signed**> </**closer**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element signed {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.written.attributes](#TEI.att.written),  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |

* + 1. <soCalled>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<soCalled>** contains a word or phrase for which the author or narrator indicates a disclaiming of responsibility, for example by the use of scare quotes or italics. [[3.3.3. Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | To edge his way along  the crowded paths of life, warning all human sympathy to keep its distance, was what the  knowing ones call <**soCalled**>nuts</**soCalled**> to Scrooge. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element soCalled { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq) } |

* + 1. <socecStatus>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<socecStatus>** (socio-economic status) contains an informal description of a person's perceived social or economic status. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **atBirth**  **atDeath**  **dependent**  **inherited**  **independent** | | | **scheme** | identifies the classification system or taxonomy in use, for example by pointing to a locally-defined <taxonomy> element or by supplying a URI for an externally-defined system.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | | **code** | identifies a status code defined within the classification system or taxonomy defined by the *@scheme* attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | |
| **Contained by** | — |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | The content of this element may be used as an alternative to the more formal specification made possible by its attributes; it may also be used to supplement the formal specification with commentary or clarification. |
| **Example** | <**socecStatus** **code**="#ab1" **scheme**="#rg"/> |
| **Example** | <**socecStatus**>Status AB1 in the RG Classification scheme</**socecStatus**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element socecStatus {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  attribute scheme { text }?,  attribute code { text }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <sourceDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<sourceDesc>** (source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence. [[2.2.7. The Source Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl list listBibl p  **figures:** table  **namesdates:** listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation |
| **Example** | <**sourceDesc**>  <**bibl**>   <**title** **level**="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</**title**>. In  <**author**>Victor E Neuberg</**author**>, <**title**>The Penny Histories</**title**>.  <**publisher**>OUP</**publisher**>   <**date**>1968</**date**>. </**bibl**> </**sourceDesc**> |
| **Example** | <**sourceDesc**>  <**p**>Born digital: no previous source exists.</**p**> </**sourceDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    <classRef key="model.sourceDescPart"/>    <classRef key="model.listLike"/>   </alternate>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element sourceDesc {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  (  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+  | ( [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) | [model.sourceDescPart](#TEI.model.sourceDescPart) | [model.listLike](#TEI.model.listLike) )+  ) } |

* + 1. <sp>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<sp>** (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text. [[3.12.2. Core Tags for Drama](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CODR) [3.12. Passages of Verse or Drama](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CODV) [7.2.2. Speeches and Speakers](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRSP)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.ascribed.directed (@toWhom) (att.ascribed (@who)) |
| **Member of** | model.divPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** item note q stage  **figures:** cell figure  **header:** change licence  **namesdates:** occupation  **textstructure:** argument body div epigraph postscript |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** cit gap index l lb lg list milestone note p pb q speaker stage  **figures:** figure table  **linking:** anchor link  **namesdates:** listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation |
| **Note** | The *@who* attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the <speaker> element or as an alternative. |
| **Example** | <**sp**>  <**speaker**>The reverend Doctor Opimian</**speaker**>  <**p**>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</**p**> </**sp**> <**sp**>  <**speaker**>Mr Gryll</**speaker**>  <**p**>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</**p**> </**sp**> <**sp**>  <**speaker**>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</**speaker**>  <**p**>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the first place [...]</**p**>  <**p**>Fish, Miss Gryll — I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but for the present I    will forbear [...]</**p**> </**sp**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.global"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="speaker"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <alternate>     <elementRef key="lg"/>     <classRef key="model.lLike"/>     <classRef key="model.pLike"/>     <classRef key="model.listLike"/>     <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>     <classRef key="model.qLike"/>    </alternate>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element sp {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.ascribed.directed.attributes](#TEI.att.ascribed.directed),  (  [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*,  ( [speaker](#TEI.speaker), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )?,  (  (  [lg](#TEI.lg) | [model.lLike](#TEI.model.lLike) | [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike) | [model.listLike](#TEI.model.listLike) | [model.stageLike](#TEI.model.stageLike) | [model.qLike](#TEI.model.qLike) ),  [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*  )+  ) } |

* + 1. <speaker>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<speaker>** contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment. [[3.12.2. Core Tags for Drama](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CODR)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** sp |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**sp** **who**="#ni #rsa">  <**speaker**>Nancy and Robert</**speaker**>  <**stage** **type**="delivery">(speaking simultaneously)</**stage**>  <**p**>The future? ...</**p**> </**sp**> <**list** **type**="speakers">  <**item** **xml:id**="ni"/>  <**item** **xml:id**="rsa"/> </**list**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element speaker { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq) } |

* + 1. <sponsor>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<sponsor>** specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution. [[2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **header:** editionStmt titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title  **figures:** figure  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | Sponsors give their intellectual authority to a project; they are to be distinguished from funders (see element <funder>), who provide the funding but do not necessarily take intellectual responsibility. |
| **Example** | <**sponsor**>Association for Computers and the Humanities</**sponsor**> <**sponsor**>Association for Computational Linguistics</**sponsor**> <**sponsor** **ref**="http://www.allc.org/">Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing</**sponsor**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element sponsor {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

* + 1. <stage>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<stage>** (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment. [[3.12.2. Core Tags for Drama](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CODR) [3.12. Passages of Verse or Drama](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CODV) [7.2.4. Stage Directions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRSTA)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.ascribed.directed (@toWhom) (att.ascribed (@who)) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.placement (@place)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | indicates the kind of stage direction.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | 0–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace | | **Suggested values include:** | **setting** describes a setting.  **entrance** describes an entrance.  **exit** describes an exit.  **business** describes stage business.  **novelistic** is a narrative, motivating stage direction.  **delivery** describes how a character speaks.  **modifier** gives some detail about a character.  **location** describes a location.  **mixed** more than one of the above | | **Note** | If the value mixed is used, it must be the only value. Multiple values may however be supplied if a single stage direction performs multiple functions, for example is both an entrance and a modifier. | | |
| **Member of** | model.stageLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del desc emph head hi item l lg note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change licence  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** occupation  **textstructure:** argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | The *@who* attribute may be used to indicate more precisely the person or persons participating in the action described by the stage direction. |
| **Example** | <**stage** **type**="setting">A curtain being drawn.</**stage**> <**stage** **type**="setting">Music</**stage**> <**stage** **type**="entrance">Enter Husband as being thrown off his horse and falls.</**stage**> <!-- Middleton : Yorkshire Tragedy --> <**stage** **type**="exit">Exit pursued by a bear.</**stage**> <**stage** **type**="business">He quickly takes the stone out.</**stage**> <**stage** **type**="delivery">To Lussurioso.</**stage**> <**stage** **type**="novelistic">Having had enough, and embarrassed for the family.</**stage**> <!-- Lorraine Hansbury : a raisin in in the sun --> <**stage** **type**="modifier">Disguised as Ansaldo.</**stage**> <**stage** **type**="entrance modifier">Enter Latrocinio disguised as an empiric</**stage**> <!-- Middleton: The Widow --> <**stage** **type**="location">At a window.</**stage**> <**stage** **rend**="inline" **type**="delivery">Aside.</**stage**> |
| **Example** | <**l**>Behold. <**stage** **n**="\*" **place**="margin">Here the vp<**lb**/>per part of the <**hi**>Scene</**hi**> open'd; when    straight appear'd a Heauen, and all the <**hi**>Pure Artes</**hi**> sitting on    two semi<**lb**/>circular ben<**lb**/>ches, one a<**lb**/>boue another: who sate thus till the rest of the  <**hi**>Prologue</**hi**> was spoken, which being ended, they descended in    order within the <**hi**>Scene,</**hi**> whiles the Musicke plaid</**stage**> Our  Poet knowing our free hearts</**l**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element stage {  [att.ascribed.directed.attributes](#TEI.att.ascribed.directed),  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.placement.attributes](#TEI.att.placement),  attribute type  {  list  {  (  "setting"  | "entrance"  | "exit"  | "business"  | "novelistic"  | "delivery"  | "modifier"  | "location"  | "mixed"  )\*  }  }?,  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |

* + 1. <state>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<state>** contains a description of some status or quality attributed to a person, place, or organization often at some specific time or for a specific date range. [[13.3.1. Basic Principles](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSbp) [13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSEpc)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus state surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **certainty:** precision  **core:** bibl desc head label listBibl note p  **namesdates:** state |
| **Note** | Where there is confusion between <trait> and <state> the more general purpose element <state> should be used even for unchanging characteristics. If you wish to distinguish between characteristics that are generally perceived to be time-bound states and those assumed to be fixed traits, then <trait> is available for the more static of these. The <state> element encodes characteristics which are sometimes assumed to change, often at specific times or over a date range, whereas the <trait> elements are used to record characteristics, such as eye-colour, which are less subject to change. Traits are typically, but not necessarily, independent of the volition or action of the holder. |
| **Example** | <**state** **ref**="#SCHOL" **type**="status">  <**label**>scholar</**label**> </**state**> |
| **Example** | <**org**>  <**orgName** **notAfter**="1960">The Silver Beetles</**orgName**>  <**orgName** **notBefore**="1960">The Beatles</**orgName**>  <**state** **from**="1960-08" **to**="1962-05"   **type**="membership">   <**desc**>    <**persName**>John Lennon</**persName**>    <**persName**>Paul McCartney</**persName**>    <**persName**>George Harrison</**persName**>    <**persName**>Stuart Sutcliffe</**persName**>    <**persName**>Pete Best</**persName**>   </**desc**>  </**state**>  <**state** **notBefore**="1963" **type**="membership">   <**desc**>    <**persName**>John Lennon</**persName**>    <**persName**>Paul McCartney</**persName**>    <**persName**>George Harrison</**persName**>    <**persName**>Ringo Starr</**persName**>   </**desc**>  </**state**> </**org**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="precision"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <elementRef key="state"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    <sequence>     <classRef key="model.headLike"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>     <classRef key="model.pLike"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>      <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>     <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>     <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    </alternate>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element state {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.att.dimensions),  (  [precision](#TEI.precision)\*,  (  [state](#TEI.state)+  | (  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+,  ( [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) )\*  )  | ( [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike) | [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) )\*  )  ) } |

* + 1. <surname>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<surname>** contains a family (inherited) name, as opposed to a given, baptismal, or nick name. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**surname** **type**="combine">St John Stevas</**surname**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element surname {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.personal.attributes](#TEI.att.personal),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <table>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<table>** contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns. [[14.1.1. TEI Tables](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FT.html#FTTAB1)] | |
| **Module** | figures |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **rows** | indicates the number of rows in the table.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.count | | **Note** | If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of rows.  Rows should be presented from top to bottom. | | | **cols** | (columns) indicates the number of columns in each row of the table.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.count | | **Note** | If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of columns.  Within each row, columns should be presented left to right. | | |
| **Member of** | model.listLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** add corr del desc emph head hi item l note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc figure  **header:** change licence sourceDesc  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** occupation  **textstructure:** argument back body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** gap graphic head index lb milestone note pb  **figures:** figure formula row  **linking:** anchor link  **textstructure:** argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph postscript salute signed trailer |
| **Note** | Contains an optional heading and a series of rows.  Any rendition information should be supplied using the global *@rend* attribute, at the table, row, or cell level as appropriate. |
| **Example** | <**table** **cols**="4" **rows**="4">  <**head**>Poor Men's Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</**head**>  <**row** **role**="label">   <**cell** **role**="data"/>   <**cell** **role**="data">Dossing Cribs or Lodging Houses</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">Beds</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">Needys or Nightly Lodgers</**cell**>  </**row**>  <**row** **role**="data">   <**cell** **role**="label">Bury St Edmund's</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">5</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">8</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">128</**cell**>  </**row**>  <**row** **role**="data">   <**cell** **role**="label">Thetford</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">3</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">6</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">36</**cell**>  </**row**>  <**row** **role**="data">   <**cell** **role**="label">Attleboro'</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">3</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">5</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">20</**cell**>  </**row**>  <**row** **role**="data">   <**cell** **role**="label">Wymondham</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">1</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">11</**cell**>   <**cell** **role**="data">22</**cell**>  </**row**> </**table**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.headLike"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>   <alternate>    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <elementRef key="row"/>     <classRef key="model.global"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>    </sequence>    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>     <classRef key="model.global"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>    </sequence>   </alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element table {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute rows { text }?,  attribute cols { text }?,  (  ( [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*,  ( ( [row](#TEI.row), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+ | ( [model.graphicLike](#TEI.model.graphicLike), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+ ),  ( [model.divBottom](#TEI.model.divBottom), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )\*  ) } |

* + 1. <taxonomy>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<taxonomy>** defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy. [[2.3.7. The Classification Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD55)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** classDecl taxonomy |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl desc gloss listBibl  **header:** category taxonomy |
| **Note** | Nested taxonomies are common in many fields, so the <taxonomy> element can be nested. |
| **Example** | <**taxonomy** **xml:id**="tax.b">  <**bibl**>Brown Corpus</**bibl**>  <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a">   <**catDesc**>Press Reportage</**catDesc**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a1">    <**catDesc**>Daily</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a2">    <**catDesc**>Sunday</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a3">    <**catDesc**>National</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a4">    <**catDesc**>Provincial</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a5">    <**catDesc**>Political</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a6">    <**catDesc**>Sports</**catDesc**>   </**category**>  </**category**>  <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.d">   <**catDesc**>Religion</**catDesc**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.d1">    <**catDesc**>Books</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.d2">    <**catDesc**>Periodicals and tracts</**catDesc**>   </**category**>  </**category**> </**taxonomy**> |
| **Example** | <**taxonomy**>  <**category** **xml:id**="literature">   <**catDesc**>Literature</**catDesc**>   <**category** **xml:id**="poetry">    <**catDesc**>Poetry</**catDesc**>    <**category** **xml:id**="sonnet">     <**catDesc**>Sonnet</**catDesc**>     <**category** **xml:id**="shakesSonnet">      <**catDesc**>Shakespearean Sonnet</**catDesc**>     </**category**>     <**category** **xml:id**="petraSonnet">      <**catDesc**>Petrarchan Sonnet</**catDesc**>     </**category**>    </**category**>    <**category** **xml:id**="haiku">     <**catDesc**>Haiku</**catDesc**>    </**category**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="drama">    <**catDesc**>Drama</**catDesc**>   </**category**>  </**category**>  <**category** **xml:id**="meter">   <**catDesc**>Metrical Categories</**catDesc**>   <**category** **xml:id**="feet">    <**catDesc**>Metrical Feet</**catDesc**>    <**category** **xml:id**="iambic">     <**catDesc**>Iambic</**catDesc**>    </**category**>    <**category** **xml:id**="trochaic">     <**catDesc**>trochaic</**catDesc**>    </**category**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="feetNumber">    <**catDesc**>Number of feet</**catDesc**>    <**category** **xml:id**="pentameter">     <**catDesc**>>Pentameter</**catDesc**>    </**category**>    <**category** **xml:id**="tetrameter">     <**catDesc**>>Tetrameter</**catDesc**>    </**category**>   </**category**>  </**category**> </**taxonomy**> <!-- elsewhere in document --> <**lg** **ana**="#shakesSonnet #iambic #pentameter">  <**l**>Shall I compare thee to a summer's day</**l**> <!-- ... --> </**lg**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <alternate>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <elementRef key="category"/>     <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>    </alternate>    <sequence>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="1">      <classRef key="model.glossLike"/>      <classRef key="model.descLike"/>     </alternate>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <elementRef key="category"/>      <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>   </alternate>   <sequence>    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <elementRef key="category"/>     <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element taxonomy {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  (  (  ( [category](#TEI.category) | [taxonomy](#TEI.taxonomy) )+  | ( ( [model.glossLike](#TEI.model.glossLike) | [model.descLike](#TEI.model.descLike) )+, ( [category](#TEI.category) | [taxonomy](#TEI.taxonomy) )\* )  )  | ( [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike), ( [category](#TEI.category) | [taxonomy](#TEI.taxonomy) )\* )  ) } |

* + 1. <teiCorpus>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<teiCorpus>** contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more <TEI> elements, each containing a single text header and a text. [[4. Default Text Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS) [15.1. Varieties of Composite Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **version** | specifies the version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.version | | **Note** | Major editions of the Guidelines have long been informally referred to by a name made up of the letter P (for Proposal) followed by a digit. The current release is one of the many releases of the fifth major edition of the Guidelines, known as P5. This attribute may be used to associate a TEI document with a specific release of the P5 Guidelines, in the absence of a more precise association provided by the *@source* attribute on the associated <schemaSpec>. | | |
| **Member of** | model.describedResource |
| **Contained by** | **core:** teiCorpus |
| **May contain** | **core:** teiCorpus  **header:** teiHeader  **textstructure:** TEI text |
| **Note** | Should contain one TEI header for the corpus, and a series of <TEI> elements, one for each text. |
| **Example** | <**teiCorpus** **version**="3.3.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  <**teiHeader**> <!-- header for corpus -->  </**teiHeader**>  <**TEI**>   <**teiHeader**> <!-- header for first text -->   </**teiHeader**>   <**text**> <!-- content of first text -->   </**text**>  </**TEI**>  <**TEI**>   <**teiHeader**> <!-- header for second text -->   </**teiHeader**>   <**text**> <!-- content of second text -->   </**text**>  </**TEI**> <!-- more TEI elements here --> </**teiCorpus**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>   <classRef key="model.resource"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.describedResource"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element teiCorpus {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute version { text }?,  ( [teiHeader](#TEI.teiHeader), [model.resource](#TEI.model.resource)\*, [model.describedResource](#TEI.model.describedResource)+ ) } |

* + 1. <teiHeader>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<teiHeader>** (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources. [[2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11) [15.1. Varieties of Composite Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** teiCorpus  **textstructure:** TEI |
| **May contain** | **header:** encodingDesc fileDesc profileDesc revisionDesc |
| **Note** | One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document. |
| **Example** | <**teiHeader**>  <**fileDesc**>   <**titleStmt**>    <**title**>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</**title**>    <**author**>Shakespeare, William (1564–1616)</**author**>    <**respStmt**>     <**resp**>Originally prepared by</**resp**>     <**name**>Trevor Howard-Hill</**name**>    </**respStmt**>    <**respStmt**>     <**resp**>Revised and edited by</**resp**>     <**name**>Christine Avern-Carr</**name**>    </**respStmt**>   </**titleStmt**>   <**publicationStmt**>    <**distributor**>Oxford Text Archive</**distributor**>    <**address**>     <**addrLine**>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</**addrLine**>    </**address**>    <**idno** **type**="OTA">119</**idno**>    <**availability**>     <**p**>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</**p**>    </**availability**>    <**date** **when**="1968">1968</**date**>   </**publicationStmt**>   <**sourceDesc**>    <**bibl**>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile,        1968)</**bibl**>   </**sourceDesc**>  </**fileDesc**>  <**encodingDesc**>   <**projectDesc**>    <**p**>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of old-spelling        concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and revised for use during the        editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</**p**>   </**projectDesc**>   <**editorialDecl**>    <**correction**>     <**p**>Turned letters are silently corrected.</**p**>    </**correction**>    <**normalization**>     <**p**>Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and ligatured          forms are not encoded.</**p**>    </**normalization**>   </**editorialDecl**>   <**refsDecl** **xml:id**="ASLREF">    <**cRefPattern** **matchPattern**="(\S+) ([^.]+)\.(.\*)"     **replacementPattern**="#xpath(//div1[@n='$1']/div2/[@n='$2']//lb[@n='$3'])">     <**p**>A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as that          listed here: <**list**>       <**item**>the <**att**>n</**att**> value of the preceding <**gi**>lb</**gi**>       </**item**>       <**item**>a period</**item**>       <**item**>the <**att**>n</**att**> value of the ancestor <**gi**>div2</**gi**>       </**item**>       <**item**>a space</**item**>       <**item**>the <**att**>n</**att**> value of the parent <**gi**>div1</**gi**>       </**item**>      </**list**>     </**p**>    </**cRefPattern**>   </**refsDecl**>  </**encodingDesc**>  <**revisionDesc**>   <**list**>    <**item**>     <**date** **when**="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</**date**> Last checked by CAC</**item**>    <**item**>     <**date** **when**="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</**date**> LB made new file</**item**>   </**list**>  </**revisionDesc**> </**teiHeader**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="fileDesc"/>   <classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="revisionDesc"    minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element teiHeader {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  ( [fileDesc](#TEI.fileDesc), [model.teiHeaderPart](#TEI.model.teiHeaderPart)\*, [revisionDesc](#TEI.revisionDesc)? ) } |

* + 1. <term>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<term>** contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [[3.3.4. Terms, Glosses, Equivalents, and Descriptions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQU)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.cReferencing (@cRef) |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi index item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder keywords language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | When this element appears within an <index> element, it is understood to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for that location. Elsewhere, it is understood simply to indicate that its content is to be regarded as a technical or specialised term. It may be associated with a <gloss> element by means of its *@ref* attribute; alternatively a <gloss> element may point to a <term> element by means of its *@target* attribute.  In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The <term> element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the <term> element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion.  As with other members of the att.canonical class, instances of this element occuring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the *@ref* attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the *@key* attribute). Because the mutually exclusive *@target* and *@cRef* attributes overlap with the function of the *@ref* attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release. |
| **Example** | A computational device that infers structure  from grammatical strings of words is known as a <**term**>parser</**term**>, and much of the history  of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers. |
| **Example** | We may define <**term** **rend**="sc" **xml:id**="TDPV1">discoursal point of view</**term**> as  <**gloss** **target**="#TDPV1">the relationship, expressed  through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the  fiction.</**gloss**> |
| **Example** | We may define <**term** **ref**="#TDPV2" **rend**="sc">discoursal point of view</**term**> as  <**gloss** **xml:id**="TDPV2">the relationship, expressed  through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the  fiction.</**gloss**> |
| **Example** | We discuss Leech's concept of <**term** **ref**="myGlossary.xml#TDPV2" **rend**="sc">discoursal point of view</**term**> below. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element term {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  [att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.att.pointing),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  [att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.att.sortable),  [att.cReferencing.attributes](#TEI.att.cReferencing),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

* + 1. <terrain>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<terrain>** contains information about the physical terrain of a place. [[13.3.4.3. States, Traits, and Events](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDGEOGste)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.placeStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname terrain  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **certainty:** precision  **core:** bibl desc head label listBibl note p  **namesdates:** terrain |
| **Example** | <**place** **xml:id**="KERG">  <**placeName**>Kerguelen Islands</**placeName**> <!-- ... -->  <**terrain**>   <**desc**>antarctic tundra</**desc**>  </**terrain**> <!-- ... --> </**place**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="precision"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.pLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    <classRef key="model.labelLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>   </alternate>   <elementRef key="terrain"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element terrain {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  (  [precision](#TEI.precision)\*,  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike)+ ),  ( [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) )\*,  [terrain](#TEI.terrain)\*  ) } |

* + 1. <text>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<text>** contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [[4. Default Text Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS) [15.1. Varieties of Composite Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.resource |
| **Contained by** | **core:** teiCorpus  **textstructure:** TEI group |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** gap index lb milestone note pb  **figures:** figure  **linking:** anchor link  **textstructure:** back body front group |
| **Note** | This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose. |
| **Example** | <**text**>  <**front**>   <**docTitle**>    <**titlePart**>Autumn Haze</**titlePart**>   </**docTitle**>  </**front**>  <**body**>   <**l**>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</**l**>   <**l**>That settles softly down upon the water?</**l**>  </**body**> </**text**> |
| **Example** | The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:  <**text**>  <**front**> <!-- front matter for the whole group -->  </**front**>  <**group**>   <**text**> <!-- first text -->   </**text**>   <**text**> <!-- second text -->   </**text**>  </**group**> </**text**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.global"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="front"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>   <alternate>    <elementRef key="body"/>    <elementRef key="group"/>   </alternate>   <classRef key="model.global"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="back"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element text {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.att.declaring),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.written.attributes](#TEI.att.written),  (  [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*,  ( [front](#TEI.front), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )?,  ( [body](#TEI.body) | [group](#TEI.group) ),  [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*,  ( [back](#TEI.back), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )?  ) } |

* + 1. <textClass>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<textClass>** (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc. [[2.4.3. The Text Classification](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD43)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **header:** catRef classCode keywords |
| **Example** | <**taxonomy**>  <**category** **xml:id**="acprose">   <**catDesc**>Academic prose</**catDesc**>  </**category**> <!-- other categories here --> </**taxonomy**> <!-- ... --> <**textClass**>  <**catRef** **target**="#acprose"/>  <**classCode** **scheme**="http://www.udcc.org">001.9</**classCode**>  <**keywords** **scheme**="http://authorities.loc.gov">   <**list**>    <**item**>End of the world</**item**>    <**item**>History - philosophy</**item**>   </**list**>  </**keywords**> </**textClass**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <elementRef key="classCode"/>   <elementRef key="catRef"/>   <elementRef key="keywords"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element textClass {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  ( [classCode](#TEI.classCode) | [catRef](#TEI.catRef) | [keywords](#TEI.keywords) )\* } |

* + 1. <time>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<time>** contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format. [[3.5.4. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.dateLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | As he sat smiling, the  quarter struck — <**time** **when**="11:45:00">the quarter to twelve</**time**>. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element time {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.att.dimensions),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |

* + 1. <title>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<title>** contains a title for any kind of work. [[3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | classifies the title according to some convenient typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **main** main title  **sub** (subordinate) subtitle, title of part  **alt** (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which the work is also known  **short** abbreviated form of title  **desc** (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning as a title | | **Note** | This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single <title> element. | | | **level** | indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **a** (analytic) the title applies to an analytic item, such as an article, poem, or other work published as part of a larger item.  **m** (monographic) the title applies to a monograph such as a book or other item considered to be a distinct publication, including single volumes of multi-volume works  **j** (journal) the title applies to any serial or periodical publication such as a journal, magazine, or newspaper  **s** (series) the title applies to a series of otherwise distinct publications such as a collection  **u** (unpublished) the title applies to any unpublished material (including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press) | | **Note** | The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for example, a title appearing directly within an <analytic> element is ipso facto of level ‘a’, and one appearing within a <series> element of level ‘s’. For this reason, the *@level* attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element. | | |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal seriesStmt sponsor titleStmt  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | The attributes *@key* and *@ref*, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title. |
| **Example** | <**title**>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of  a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK,  18–21 July 1989</**title**> |
| **Example** | <**title**>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable  edition</**title**> |
| **Example** | <**title** **type**="full">  <**title** **type**="main">Synthèse</**title**>  <**title** **type**="sub">an international journal for    epistemology, methodology and history of    science</**title**> </**title**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element title {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  attribute type { text }?,  attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "u" }?,  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |

* + 1. <titlePage>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<titlePage>** (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | classifies the title page according to any convenient typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Note** | This attribute allows the same element to be used for volume title pages, series title pages, etc., as well as for the ‘main’ title page of a work. | | |
| **Member of** | model.frontPart |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** back front |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** gap graphic index lb milestone note pb  **figures:** figure  **linking:** anchor link  **textstructure:** argument byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph imprimatur titlePart |
| **Example** | <**titlePage**>  <**docTitle**>   <**titlePart** **type**="main">THOMAS OF Reading.</**titlePart**>   <**titlePart** **type**="alt">OR, The sixe worthy yeomen of the West.</**titlePart**>  </**docTitle**>  <**docEdition**>Now the fourth time corrected and enlarged</**docEdition**>  <**byline**>By T.D.</**byline**>  <**figure**>   <**head**>TP</**head**>   <**p**>Thou shalt labor till thou returne to duste</**p**>   <**figDesc**>Printers Ornament used by TP</**figDesc**>  </**figure**>  <**docImprint**>Printed at <**name** **type**="place">London</**name**> for <**name**>T.P.</**name**>   <**date**>1612.</**date**>  </**docImprint**> </**titlePage**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.global"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.titlepagePart"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.titlepagePart"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element titlePage {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  (  [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*,  [model.titlepagePart](#TEI.model.titlepagePart),  ( [model.titlepagePart](#TEI.model.titlepagePart) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*  ) } |

* + 1. <titlePart>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<titlePart>** contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | specifies the role of this subdivision of the title.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Suggested values include:** | **main** main title of the work [Default]  **sub** (subordinate) subtitle of the work  **alt** (alternate) alternative title of the work  **short** abbreviated form of title  **desc** (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work | | |
| **Member of** | model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** back docTitle front titlePage |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**docTitle**>  <**titlePart** **type**="main">THE FORTUNES    AND MISFORTUNES Of the FAMOUS    Moll Flanders, &amp;c.  </**titlePart**>  <**titlePart** **type**="desc">Who was BORN in NEWGATE,    And during a Life of continu'd Variety for    Threescore Years, besides her Childhood, was    Twelve Year a <**hi**>Whore</**hi**>, five times a <**hi**>Wife</**hi**> (wherof    once to her own Brother) Twelve Year a <**hi**>Thief,</**hi**>    Eight Year a Transported <**hi**>Felon</**hi**> in <**hi**>Virginia</**hi**>,    at last grew <**hi**>Rich</**hi**>, liv'd <**hi**>Honest</**hi**>, and died a  <**hi**>Penitent</**hi**>.</**titlePart**> </**docTitle**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element titlePart {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute type { "main" | "sub" | "alt" | "short" | "desc" }?,  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |

* + 1. <titleStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<titleStmt>** (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [[2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21) [2.2. The File Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** author editor respStmt title  **header:** funder principal sponsor |
| **Example** | <**titleStmt**>  <**title**>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable transcription</**title**>  <**respStmt**>   <**resp**>compiled by</**resp**>   <**name**>P.J. Lucas</**name**>  </**respStmt**> </**titleStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="title"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <classRef key="model.respLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element titleStmt { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), ( [title](#TEI.title)+, [model.respLike](#TEI.model.respLike)\* ) } |

* + 1. <trailer>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<trailer>** contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text. [[4.2.4. Content of Textual Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSCO) [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.placement (@place) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.divBottomPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** lg list  **figures:** figure table  **textstructure:** back body div front group postscript |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Example** | <**trailer**>Explicit pars tertia</**trailer**> |
| **Example** | <**trailer**>  <**l**>In stead of FINIS this advice <**hi**>I</**hi**> send,</**l**>  <**l**>Let Rogues and Thieves beware of <**lb**/>   <**hi**>Hamans</**hi**> END.</**l**> </**trailer**>  From EEBO A87070 |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <elementRef key="lg"/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.inter"/>   <classRef key="model.lLike"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element trailer {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.placement.attributes](#TEI.att.placement),  [att.written.attributes](#TEI.att.written),  (  text  | [lg](#TEI.lg) | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.inter](#TEI.model.inter) | [model.lLike](#TEI.model.lLike) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |

* + 1. <trait>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<trait>** contains a description of some status or quality attributed to a person, place, or organization typically, but not necessarily, independent of the volition or action of the holder and usually not at some specific time or for a specific date range. [[13.3.1. Basic Principles](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSbp) [13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSEpc)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname trait  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **certainty:** precision  **core:** bibl desc head label listBibl note p  **namesdates:** trait |
| **Note** | Where there is confusion between <trait> and <state> the more general purpose element <state> should be used even for unchanging characteristics. If you wish to distinguish between characteristics that are generally perceived to be time-bound states and those assumed to be fixed traits, then <trait> is available for the more static of these. The <state> element encodes characteristics which are sometimes assumed to change, often at specific times or over a date range, whereas the <trait> elements are used to record characteristics, such as eye-colour, which are less subject to change. Traits are typically, but not necessarily, independent of the volition or action of the holder. |
| **Example** | <**trait** **type**="physical">  <**label**>Eye colour</**label**>  <**desc**>Blue</**desc**> </**trait**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="precision"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <elementRef key="trait"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    <sequence>     <classRef key="model.headLike"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>     <classRef key="model.pLike"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>      <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>     <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>     <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    </alternate>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element trait {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.att.dimensions),  (  [precision](#TEI.precision)\*,  (  [trait](#TEI.trait)+  | (  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+,  ( [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) )\*  )  | ( [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike) | [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) )\*  )  ) } |

* + 1. <unclear>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<unclear>** contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source. [[11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHDA) [3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDADD)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **reason** | indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace | | **Suggested values include:** | **illegible**  **inaudible**  **faded**  **background\_noise**  **eccentric\_ductus** | | <**div**>  <**head**>Rx</**head**>  <**p**>500 mg <**unclear** **reason**="illegible">placebo</**unclear**>  </**p**> </**div**> | | | **Note** | One or more words may be used to describe the reason; usually each word will refer to a single cause. | | | **agent** | Where the difficulty in transcription arises from damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges  **mildew** damage results from mildew on the leaf surface  **smoke** damage results from smoke | | |
| **Member of** | model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change distributor edition extent licence  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc s w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear  **figures:** figure formula table  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor link seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  **tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val  character data |
| **Note** | The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter [21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CE.html#CE).  The <damage>, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section [11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHCOMB) for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.  The *@hand* attribute points to a definition of the hand concerned, as further discussed in section [11.3.2.1. Document Hands](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHDH). |
| **Example** | <**u**> ...and then <**unclear** **reason**="background-noise">Nathalie</**unclear**> said ... </**u**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element unclear {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.att.editLike),  [att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.att.dimensions),  attribute reason  {  list  {  (  "illegible"  | "inaudible"  | "faded"  | "background\_noise"  | "eccentric\_ductus"  )+  }  }?,  attribute agent { text }?,  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |

* + 1. <val>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<val>** (value) contains a single attribute value. [[22. Documentation Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TD) [22.5.3. Attribute List Specification](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TDATT)] | |
| **Module** | tagdocs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Member of** | model.phrase.xml |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell figDesc  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | Character data only |
| **Example** | <**val**>unknown</**val**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element val { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), text } |

* + 1. <w>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<w>** (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word. [[17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILC) [17.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILALW)] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.linguistic (@lemma, @lemmaRef, @pos, @msd, @join) att.notated (@notation) |
| **Member of** | model.segLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear  **figures:** cell  **header:** change distributor edition extent licence  **linking:** seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **tagdocs:** eg  **textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** interp interpGrp pc w  **certainty:** certainty precision respons  **core:** abbr add choice corr del expan gap hi index lb milestone note orig pb reg sic unclear  **figures:** figure  **linking:** anchor link seg  character data |
| **Example** | This example is adapted from the Folger Library’s Early Modern English Drama version of [The Wits: a Comedy](https://emed.folger.edu/wits) by William Davenant.  <**l**>  <**w** **lemma**="it" **pos**="pn"   **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0100">IT</**w**>  <**w** **lemma**="have" **pos**="vvz"   **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0110">hath</**w**>  <**w** **lemma**="be" **pos**="vvn"   **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0120">been</**w**>  <**w** **lemma**="say" **pos**="vvn"   **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0130">said</**w**>  <**w** **lemma**="of" **pos**="acp-p"   **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0140">of</**w**>  <**w** **lemma**="old" **pos**="j"   **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0150">old</**w**>  <**pc** **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0160">,</**pc**>  <**w** **lemma**="that" **pos**="cs"   **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0170">that</**w**>  <**w** **lemma**="play" **pos**="vvz"   **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0180">   <**choice**>    <**orig**>Playes</**orig**>    <**reg**>Plays</**reg**>   </**choice**>  </**w**>  <**w** **lemma**="be" **pos**="vvb"   **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0190">are</**w**>  <**w** **lemma**="feast" **pos**="n2"   **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0200">Feasts</**w**>  <**pc** **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0210">,</**pc**> </**l**> <**l** **xml:id**="A19883-e100220">  <**w** **lemma**="poet" **pos**="n2"   **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0220">Poets</**w**>  <**w** **lemma**="the" **pos**="d"   **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0230">the</**w**>  <**w** **lemma**="cook" **pos**="n2"   **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0240">   <**choice**>    <**orig**>Cookes</**orig**>    <**reg**>Cooks</**reg**>   </**choice**>  </**w**>  <**pc** **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0250">,</**pc**>  <**w** **lemma**="and" **pos**="cc"   **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0260">and</**w**>  <**w** **lemma**="the" **pos**="d"   **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0270">the</**w**>  <**w** **lemma**="spectator" **pos**="n2"   **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0280">Spectators</**w**>  <**w** **lemma**="guest" **pos**="n2"   **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0290">Guests</**w**>  <**pc** **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0300">,</**pc**> </**l**> <**l** **xml:id**="A19883-e100230">  <**w** **lemma**="the" **pos**="d"   **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0310">The</**w**>  <**w** **lemma**="actor" **pos**="n2"   **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0320">Actors</**w**>  <**w** **lemma**="waiter" **pos**="n2"   **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0330">Waiters</**w**>  <**pc** **xml:id**="A19883-003-a-0340">:</**pc**> <!-- ... --> </**l**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <elementRef key="seg"/>   <elementRef key="w"/>   <elementRef key="m"/>   <elementRef key="c"/>   <elementRef key="pc"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>   <classRef key="model.lPart"/>   <classRef key="model.hiLike"/>   <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element w {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.segLike.attributes](#TEI.att.segLike),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.linguistic.attributes](#TEI.att.linguistic),  [att.notated.attributes](#TEI.att.notated),  (  text  | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [seg](#TEI.seg) | [w](#TEI.w) | [m](#TEI.m) | [c](#TEI.c) | [pc](#TEI.pc) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.lPart](#TEI.model.lPart) | [model.hiLike](#TEI.model.hiLike) | [model.pPart.edit](#TEI.model.pPart.edit) )\* } |

* 1. Model classes
     1. model.addrPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.addrPart**   groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [[3.5.2. Addresses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | address |
| **Members** | model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name orgName persName] model.offsetLike [geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement] climate location population state terrain trait] idno objectName rs] addrLine |

* + 1. model.addressLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.addressLike**   groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [[1. The TEI Infrastructure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#ST)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | location model.pPart.data |
| **Members** | address affiliation |

* + 1. model.availabilityPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.availabilityPart**   groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | availability |
| **Members** | licence |

* + 1. model.biblLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.biblLike**   groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [[3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBI)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | cit climate event listBibl location model.inter object org place population relatedItem sourceDesc state taxonomy terrain trait |
| **Members** | bibl listBibl |

* + 1. model.biblPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.biblPart**   groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [[3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBI)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl |
| **Members** | model.imprintPart [biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher] model.respLike [author editor funder principal respStmt sponsor] availability bibl edition extent listRelation objectIdentifier relatedItem |

* + 1. model.certLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.certLike**   groups elements which are used to indicate uncertainty or precision of other elements. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | certainty gap interp precision respons |
| **Members** | certainty precision respons |

* + 1. model.choicePart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.choicePart**   groups elements (other than <choice> itself) which can be used within a <choice> alternation. [[3.4. Simple Editorial Changes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | choice |
| **Members** | abbr corr expan orig reg seg sic unclear |

* + 1. model.common

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.common**   groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | argument body div epigraph figure postscript |
| **Members** | model.divPart [model.lLike [l] model.pLike [p] lg sp] model.inter [model.biblLike [bibl listBibl] model.egLike [eg] model.labelLike [desc label] model.listLike [list listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation table] [model.oddDecl](#TEI.model.oddDecl) model.qLike [model.quoteLike [cit] q] model.stageLike [stage] ] |
| **Note** | This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions. |

* + 1. model.dateLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.dateLike**   groups elements containing temporal expressions. [[3.5.4. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA) [13.3.7. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.pPart.data |
| **Members** | date time |

* + 1. model.descLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.descLike**   groups elements which contain a description of their function. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | category certainty gap graphic interp interpGrp precision respons taxonomy |
| **Members** | desc |

* + 1. model.describedResource

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.describedResource**   groups elements which contain the content of a digital resource and its metadata; these elements may serve as the outermost or ‘root’ element of a TEI-conformant document [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teiCorpus |
| **Members** | TEI teiCorpus |

* + 1. model.divBottom

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divBottom**   groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | body div figure front group lg list table |
| **Members** | model.divBottomPart [closer postscript signed trailer] model.divWrapper [argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph salute] |

* + 1. model.divBottomPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divBottomPart**   groups elements which can occur only at the end of a text division. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | back model.divBottom postscript |
| **Members** | closer postscript signed trailer |

* + 1. model.divGenLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divGenLike**   groups elements used to represent a structural division which is generated rather than explicitly present in the source. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | body div |
| **Members** | divGen |

* + 1. model.divLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divLike**   groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | back body div front |
| **Members** | div |

* + 1. model.divPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divPart**   groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | macro.specialPara model.common |
| **Members** | model.lLike [l] model.pLike [p] lg sp |
| **Note** | Note that this element class does not include members of the model.inter class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items. |

* + 1. model.divTop

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divTop**   groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | body div group lg list |
| **Members** | model.divTopPart [model.headLike [head] opener signed] model.divWrapper [argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph salute] |

* + 1. model.divTopPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divTopPart**   groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.divTop postscript |
| **Members** | model.headLike [head] opener signed |

* + 1. model.divWrapper

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divWrapper**   groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division. [[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.divBottom model.divTop |
| **Members** | argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph salute |

* + 1. model.egLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.egLike**   groups elements containing examples or illustrations. [[22.1.1. Phrase Level Terms](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TDphraseTE)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | cit model.inter |
| **Members** | eg |

* + 1. model.emphLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.emphLike**   groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQ)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase |
| **Members** | code emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term title |

* + 1. model.encodingDescPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.encodingDescPart**   groups elements which may be used inside <encodingDesc> and appear multiple times. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | encodingDesc |
| **Members** | classDecl editorialDecl projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl |

* + 1. model.eventLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.eventLike**   groups elements which describe events. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | listEvent model.orgPart place |
| **Members** | event listEvent |

* + 1. model.frontPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.frontPart**   groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter. [[7.1. Front and Back Matter](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRFAB) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | back front |
| **Members** | [model.frontPart.drama](#TEI.model.frontPart.drama) divGen listBibl titlePage |

* + 1. model.global

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.global**   groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | address argument back bibl body byline cit closer date dateline div docImprint docTitle epigraph figure front group head l lg list macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara opener person personGrp persona postscript sp table text time titlePage trailer w |
| **Members** | model.global.edit [gap] model.global.meta [certainty index interp interpGrp link precision respons] model.milestoneLike [anchor lb milestone pb] model.noteLike [note] figure |

* + 1. model.global.edit

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.global.edit**   groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.global |
| **Members** | gap |

* + 1. model.global.meta

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.global.meta**   groups globally available elements which describe the status of other elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.global |
| **Members** | certainty index interp interpGrp link precision respons |
| **Note** | Elements in this class are typically used to hold groups of links or of abstract interpretations, or by provide indications of certainty etc. It may find be convenient to localize all metadata elements, for example to contain them within the same divison as the elements that they relate to; or to locate them all to a division of their own. They may however appear at any point in a TEI text. |

* + 1. model.glossLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.glossLike**   groups elements which provide an alternative name, explanation, or description for any markup construct. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | category taxonomy |
| **Members** | gloss |

* + 1. model.graphicLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.graphicLike**   groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects. [[3.9. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COGR)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | figure formula model.phrase table |
| **Members** | formula graphic |

* + 1. model.headLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.headLike**   groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | argument climate divGen event figure listBibl listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation model.divTopPart object org place population state table terrain trait |
| **Members** | head |

* + 1. model.hiLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.hiLike**   groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQ)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | formula model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase w |
| **Members** | hi |

* + 1. model.highlighted

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.highlighted**   groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQ)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl model.phrase |
| **Members** | model.emphLike [code emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term title] model.hiLike [hi] |

* + 1. model.imprintPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.imprintPart**   groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [[3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBI)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.biblPart |
| **Members** | biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher |

* + 1. model.inter

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.inter**   groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | head l macro.limitedContent macro.paraContent macro.specialPara model.common trailer |
| **Members** | model.biblLike [bibl listBibl] model.egLike [eg] model.labelLike [desc label] model.listLike [list listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation table] [model.oddDecl](#TEI.model.oddDecl) model.qLike [model.quoteLike [cit] q] model.stageLike [stage] |

* + 1. model.lLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.lLike**   groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | head lg macro.paraContent model.divPart sp trailer |
| **Members** | l |

* + 1. model.labelLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.labelLike**   groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | climate event lg location model.inter org place population state terrain trait |
| **Members** | desc label |

* + 1. model.limitedPhrase

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.limitedPhrase**   groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | catDesc creation macro.limitedContent macro.phraseSeq.limited |
| **Members** | model.emphLike [code emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term title] model.hiLike [hi] model.pPart.data [model.addressLike [address affiliation] model.dateLike [date time] model.measureLike [geo num] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name orgName persName] model.offsetLike [geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement] climate location population state terrain trait] idno objectName rs] ] model.pPart.editorial [abbr choice expan] [model.pPart.msdesc](#TEI.model.pPart.msdesc) model.phrase.xml [att gi val] model.ptrLike [ptr ref] |

* + 1. model.listLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.listLike**   groups list-like elements. [[3.7. Lists](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | back model.inter sourceDesc sp |
| **Members** | list listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation table |

* + 1. model.measureLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.measureLike**   groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning. [[3.5.3. Numbers and Measures](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONANU)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | location model.pPart.data |
| **Members** | geo num |

* + 1. model.milestoneLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.milestoneLike**   groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC) [3.10.3. Milestone Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | listBibl model.global org |
| **Members** | anchor lb milestone pb |

* + 1. model.nameLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.nameLike**   groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.addrPart model.pPart.data org |
| **Members** | model.nameLike.agent [name orgName persName] model.offsetLike [geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement] climate location population state terrain trait] idno objectName rs |
| **Note** | A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc. |

* + 1. model.nameLike.agent

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.nameLike.agent**   groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [[3.5. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONA)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.nameLike respStmt |
| **Members** | name orgName persName |
| **Note** | This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations. |

* + 1. model.noteLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.noteLike**   groups globally-available note-like elements. [[3.8. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONO)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | climate event location model.global notesStmt object org place population state terrain trait |
| **Members** | note |

* + 1. model.objectLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.objectLike**   groups elements which describe objects. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | listObject |
| **Members** | listObject object |

* + 1. model.offsetLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.offsetLike**   groups elements which can appear only as part of a place name. [[13.2.3. Place Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | location model.nameLike |
| **Members** | geogFeat offset |

* + 1. model.orgPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.orgPart**   groups elements which form part of the description of an organization. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | org |
| **Members** | model.eventLike [event listEvent] listOrg listPerson listPlace |

* + 1. model.pLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pLike**   groups paragraph-like elements. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | availability back climate editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc event front langKnowledge langUsage listRelation model.divPart nym object org person personGrp persona place population projectDesc publicationStmt refsDecl samplingDecl seriesStmt sourceDesc sp state terrain trait |
| **Members** | p |

* + 1. model.pLike.front

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pLike.front**   groups paragraph-like elements which can occur as direct constituents of front matter. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | back front |
| **Members** | argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph head titlePart |

* + 1. model.pPart.data

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pPart.data**   groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [[3.5. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONA)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase |
| **Members** | model.addressLike [address affiliation] model.dateLike [date time] model.measureLike [geo num] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name orgName persName] model.offsetLike [geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement] climate location population state terrain trait] idno objectName rs] |

* + 1. model.pPart.edit

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pPart.edit**   groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [[3.4. Simple Editorial Changes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl model.phrase pc w |
| **Members** | model.pPart.editorial [abbr choice expan] model.pPart.transcriptional [add corr del orig reg sic unclear] |

* + 1. model.pPart.editorial

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pPart.editorial**   groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring. [[3.4. Simple Editorial Changes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.limitedPhrase model.pPart.edit |
| **Members** | abbr choice expan |

* + 1. model.pPart.transcriptional

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pPart.transcriptional**   groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials. [[3.4. Simple Editorial Changes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.pPart.edit |
| **Members** | add corr del orig reg sic unclear |

* + 1. model.persNamePart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.persNamePart**   groups elements which form part of a personal name. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Used by** | model.nameLike |
| **Members** | addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname |

* + 1. model.personLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.personLike**   groups elements which provide information about people and their relationships. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | listPerson org |
| **Members** | org person personGrp |

* + 1. model.phrase

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.phrase**   groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | byline closer date dateline docImprint head l macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara opener time trailer |
| **Members** | model.graphicLike [formula graphic] model.highlighted [model.emphLike [code emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term title] model.hiLike [hi] ] [model.lPart](#TEI.model.lPart) model.pPart.data [model.addressLike [address affiliation] model.dateLike [date time] model.measureLike [geo num] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name orgName persName] model.offsetLike [geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement] climate location population state terrain trait] idno objectName rs] ] model.pPart.edit [model.pPart.editorial [abbr choice expan] model.pPart.transcriptional [add corr del orig reg sic unclear] ] [model.pPart.msdesc](#TEI.model.pPart.msdesc) model.phrase.xml [att gi val] model.ptrLike [ptr ref] model.segLike [pc s seg w] [model.specDescLike](#TEI.model.specDescLike) |
| **Note** | This class of elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc. |

* + 1. model.phrase.xml

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.phrase.xml**   groups phrase-level elements used to encode XML constructs such as element names, attribute names, and attribute values [[22. Documentation Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TD)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.limitedPhrase model.phrase |
| **Members** | att gi val |

* + 1. model.placeLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.placeLike**   groups elements used to provide information about places and their relationships. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | listPlace org place |
| **Members** | place |

* + 1. model.placeNamePart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.placeNamePart**   groups elements which form part of a place name. [[13.2.3. Place Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | location model.placeStateLike objectIdentifier |
| **Members** | bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement |

* + 1. model.placeStateLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.placeStateLike**   groups elements which describe changing states of a place. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.nameLike place |
| **Members** | model.placeNamePart [bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement] climate location population state terrain trait |

* + 1. model.profileDescPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.profileDescPart**   groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | profileDesc |
| **Members** | creation langUsage textClass |

* + 1. model.ptrLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.ptrLike**   groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [[3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COXR)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl cit model.limitedPhrase model.phrase model.publicationStmtPart.detail relatedItem |
| **Members** | ptr ref |

* + 1. model.publicationStmtPart.agency

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.publicationStmtPart.agency**   groups the child elements of a <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | publicationStmt |
| **Members** | authority distributor publisher |
| **Note** | The ‘agency’ child elements, while not required, are required if one of the ‘detail’ child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a ‘detail’ child element without a preceding ‘agency’ child element.  See also model.publicationStmtPart.detail. |

* + 1. model.publicationStmtPart.detail

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.publicationStmtPart.detail**   groups the agency-specific child elements of the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | publicationStmt |
| **Members** | model.ptrLike [ptr ref] address availability date idno pubPlace |
| **Note** | A ‘detail’ child element may not occur unless an ‘agency’ child element precedes it.  See also model.publicationStmtPart.agency. |

* + 1. model.qLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.qLike**   groups elements related to highlighting which can appear either within or between chunk-level elements. [[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQ)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | cit macro.phraseSeq model.inter sp |
| **Members** | model.quoteLike [cit] q |

* + 1. model.quoteLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.quoteLike**   groups elements used to directly contain quotations. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.qLike |
| **Members** | cit |

* + 1. model.resource

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.resource**   groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | TEI teiCorpus |
| **Members** | text |

* + 1. model.respLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.respLike**   groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | editionStmt model.biblPart titleStmt |
| **Members** | author editor funder principal respStmt sponsor |

* + 1. model.segLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.segLike**   groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [[16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASE) [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl model.phrase |
| **Members** | pc s seg w |
| **Note** | The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the <segmentation> element of the <encodingDesc> within the associated TEI header. |

* + 1. model.stageLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.stageLike**   groups elements containing stage directions or similar things defined by the module for performance texts. [[7.3. Other Types of Performance Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DROTH)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | lg model.inter sp |
| **Members** | stage |
| **Note** | Stage directions are members of class inter: that is, they can appear between or within component-level elements. |

* + 1. model.teiHeaderPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.teiHeaderPart**   groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teiHeader |
| **Members** | encodingDesc profileDesc |

* + 1. model.titlepagePart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.titlepagePart**   groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of a title page, such as <docTitle>, <docAuthor>, <docImprint>, or <epigraph>. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | titlePage |
| **Members** | argument byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph graphic imprimatur titlePart |

* 1. Attribute classes
     1. att.ascribed

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.ascribed**   provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [[3.3.3. Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ) [8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBA)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.ascribed.directed [q sp stage] change |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **who** | indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the *@who* attribute.  <**castItem** **type**="role">  <**role** **xml:id**="Barnardo">Bernardo</**role**> </**castItem**> <**castItem** **type**="role">  <**role** **xml:id**="Francisco">Francisco</**role**>  <**roleDesc**>a soldier</**roleDesc**> </**castItem**> <!-- ... --> <**sp** **who**="#Barnardo">  <**speaker**>Bernardo</**speaker**>  <**l** **n**="1">Who's there?</**l**> </**sp**> <**sp** **who**="#Francisco">  <**speaker**>Francisco</**speaker**>  <**l** **n**="2">Nay, answer me: stand, and unfold yourself.</**l**> </**sp**> | | | **Note** | For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <person> element. | | |

* + 1. att.ascribed.directed

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.ascribed.directed**   provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be directed at a group or individual. [[3.3.3. Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ) [8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBA)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | q sp stage |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.ascribed (@who)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **toWhom** | indicates the person, or group of people, to whom a speech act or action is directed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | In the following example from Mary Pix's The False Friend, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the *@toWhom* attribute, which is used to specify who the speech is directed to. Additionally, the <stage> includes *@toWhom* to indicate the directionality of the action.  <**castItem** **type**="role">  <**role** **xml:id**="emil">Emilius.</**role**> </**castItem**> <**castItem** **type**="role">  <**role** **xml:id**="lov">Lovisa</**role**> </**castItem**> <**castItem** **type**="role">  <**role** **xml:id**="serv">A servant</**role**> </**castItem**> <!-- ... --> <**sp** **toWhom**="#lov"  **who**="#emil">  <**speaker**>Emil.</**speaker**>  <**l** **n**="1">My love!</**l**> </**sp**> <**sp** **toWhom**="#emil"  **who**="#lov">  <**speaker**>Lov.</**speaker**>  <**l** **n**="2">I have no Witness of my Noble Birth</**l**>  <**stage** **toWhom**="#serv"   **who**="emil">Pointing to her Woman.</**stage**>  <**l**>But that poor helpless wretch——</**l**> </**sp**> | | | **Note** | To indicate the recipient of written correspondence, use the elements used in section [2.4.6. Correspondence Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD44CD), rather than a *@toWhom* attribute. | | |

* + 1. att.breaking

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.breaking**   provides an attribute to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace. [[3.10.3. Milestone Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | lb milestone pb |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **break** | indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include** | **yes** the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace  **no** the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace  **maybe** the encoding does not take any position on this issue. | | In the following lines from the ‘Dream of the Rood’, linebreaks occur in the middle of the words lāðost and reord-berendum.  <**ab**> ...eƿesa tome iu icƿæs ȝeƿorden ƿita heardoſt .  leodum la<**lb** **break**="no"/> ðost ærþan ichim lifes  ƿeȝ rihtne ȝerymde reord be<**lb** **break**="no"/>  rendum hƿæt me þaȝeƿeorðode ƿuldres ealdor ofer... </**ab**> | | | |

* + 1. att.cReferencing

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.cReferencing**   provides an attribute which may be used to supply a canonical reference as a means of identifying the target of a pointer. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | gloss ptr ref term |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **cRef** | (canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference expressed using the scheme defined in a <refsDecl> element in the TEI header   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.text | | **Note** | The value of *@cRef* should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section [16.2.5. Canonical References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SACR)) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended target.  The <refsDecl> to use may be indicated with the *@decls* attribute.  Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given <ptr> element. | | |

* + 1. att.canonical

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.canonical**   provides attributes which can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced. [[13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDATTSnr)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.naming [att.personal [addName forename genName name objectName orgName persName placeName roleName surname] affiliation author birth bloc climate country death district editor education event geogFeat geogName nationality occupation offset population pubPlace region residence rs settlement socecStatus state terrain trait] authority catDesc date distributor docAuthor docTitle faith funder object principal publisher relation resp respStmt sponsor term time title |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **key** | provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.text | | <**author**>  <**name** **key**="name 427308"   **type**="organisation">[New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council]</**name**> </**author**> | | | <**author**>  <**name** **key**="Hugo, Victor (1802-1885)"   **ref**="http://www.idref.fr/026927608">Victor Hugo</**name**> </**author**> | | | **Note** | The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent.  No particular syntax is proposed for the values of the *@key* attribute, since its form will depend entirely on practice within a given project. For the same reason, this attribute is not recommended in data interchange, since there is no way of ensuring that the values used by one project are distinct from those used by another. In such a situation, a preferable approach for magic tokens which follows standard practice on the Web is to use a *@ref* attribute whose value is a tag URI as defined in [RFC 4151](#RFC4151). | | | **ref** | (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | <**name** **ref**="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338"  **type**="person">Seamus Heaney</**name**> | | | **Note** | The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities. | | |

* + 1. att.citing

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.citing**   provides attributes for specifying the specific part of a bibliographic item being cited. [[1.3.1. Attribute Classes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECAT)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | biblScope |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **unit** | identifies the unit of information conveyed by the element, e.g. columns, pages, volume, entry.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Suggested values include:** | **volume** the element contains a volume number.  **issue** the element contains an issue number, or volume and issue numbers.  **page** the element contains a page number or page range.  **line** the element contains a line number or line range.  **chapter** the element contains a chapter indication (number and/or title)  **part** the element identifies a part of a book or collection.  **column** the element identifies a column.  **entry** the element identifies an entry number or label in a list of entries. | | | **from** | specifies the starting point of the range of units indicated by the *@unit* attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.word | | | **to** | specifies the end-point of the range of units indicated by the *@unit* attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.word | | |

* + 1. att.datable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datable**   provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events. [[3.5.4. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA) [13.3.7. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | affiliation age birth bloc change climate country creation date death district education event faith floruit geogFeat geogName idno langKnowledge langKnown licence location name nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName population precision region relation residence resp settlement sex socecStatus state terrain time title trait |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datable.w3c (@when) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **period** | supplies a pointer to some location defining a named period of time within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | |
| **Note** | This ‘superclass’ provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the att.datable.w3c class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the att.datable.iso and att.datable.custom classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes. |

* + 1. att.datable.custom

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datable.custom**   provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events to a custom dating system (i.e. other than the Gregorian used by W3 and ISO). [[13.3.7. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Members** | att.datable [affiliation age birth bloc change climate country creation date death district education event faith floruit geogFeat geogName idno langKnowledge langKnown licence location name nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName population precision region relation residence resp settlement sex socecStatus state terrain time title trait] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **when-custom** | supplies the value of a date or time in some custom standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | The following are examples of custom date or time formats that are *not* valid ISO or W3C format normalizations, normalized to a different dating system  <**p**>Alhazen died in Cairo on the <**date** **when**="1040-03-06"   **when-custom**="431-06-12"> 12th day of Jumada t-Tania, 430 AH  </**date**>.</**p**> <**p**>The current world will end at the <**date** **when**="2012-12-21"   **when-custom**="13.0.0.0.0">end of B'ak'tun 13</**date**>.</**p**> <**p**>The Battle of Meggidu  (<**date** **when-custom**="Thutmose\_III:23">23rd year of reign of Thutmose III</**date**>).</**p**> <**p**>Esidorus bixit in pace annos LXX plus minus sub <**date** **when-custom**="Ind:4-10-11">die XI mensis Octobris indictione IIII</**date**> </**p**>  Not all custom date formulations will have Gregorian equivalents.The *@when-custom* attribute and other custom dating are not constrained to a datatype by the TEI, but individual projects are recommended to regularize and document their dating formats. | | | | **notBefore-custom** | specifies the earliest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | | **notAfter-custom** | specifies the latest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | | **from-custom** | indicates the starting point of the period in some custom standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | <**event** **datingMethod**="#julian"  **from-custom**="1666-09-02"  **to-custom**="1666-09-05"  **xml:id**="FIRE1">  <**head**>The Great Fire of London</**head**>  <**p**>The Great Fire of London burned through a large part    of the city of London.</**p**> </**event**> | | | | **to-custom** | indicates the ending point of the period in some custom standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | | **datingPoint** | supplies a pointer to some location defining a named point in time with reference to which the datable item is understood to have occurred   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | | **datingMethod** | supplies a pointer to a <calendar> element or other means of interpreting the values of the custom dating attributes.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | Contayning the Originall, Antiquity, Increaſe, Moderne  eſtate, and deſcription of that Citie, written in the yeare <**date** **calendar**="#julian"  **datingMethod**="#julian"  **when-custom**="1598">1598</**date**>. by Iohn Stow  Citizen of London.  In this example, the *@calendar* attribute points to a <calendar> element for the Julian calendar, specifying that the text content of the <date> element is a Julian date, and the *@datingMethod* attribute also points to the Julian calendar to indicate that the content of the *@when-custom* attribute value is Julian too. | | | <**date** **datingMethod**="#creationOfWorld"  **when**="1382-06-28"  **when-custom**="6890-06-20"> μηνὶ Ἰουνίου εἰς <**num**>κ</**num**> ἔτους <**num**>ςωϞ</**num**> </**date**>  In this example, a date is given in a Mediaeval text measured "from the creation of the world", which is normalised (in *@when*) to the Gregorian date, but is also normalized (in *@when-custom*) to a machine-actionable, numeric version of the date from the Creation. | | | **Note** | Note that the *@datingMethod* attribute (unlike *@calendar* defined in att.datable) defines the calendar or dating system to which the date described by the parent element is normalized (i.e. in the *@when-custom* or other *@X-custom* attributes), *not* the calendar of the original date in the element. | | |

* + 1. att.datable.iso

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datable.iso**   provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the ISO 8601 standard. [[3.5.4. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA) [13.3.7. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Members** | att.datable [affiliation age birth bloc change climate country creation date death district education event faith floruit geogFeat geogName idno langKnowledge langKnown licence location name nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName population precision region relation residence resp settlement sex socecStatus state terrain time title trait] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **when-iso** | supplies the value of a date or time in a standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.iso | | The following are examples of ISO date, time, and date & time formats that are *not* valid W3C format normalizations.  <**date** **when-iso**="1996-09-24T07:25+00">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</**date**> <**date** **when-iso**="1996-09-24T03:25-04">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</**date**> <**time** **when-iso**="1999-01-04T20:42-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</**time**> <**time** **when-iso**="1999-W01-1T20,70-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</**time**> <**date** **when-iso**="2006-05-18T10:03">a few minutes after ten in the morning on Thu 18 May</**date**> <**time** **when-iso**="03:00">3 A.M.</**time**> <**time** **when-iso**="14">around two</**time**> <**time** **when-iso**="15,5">half past three</**time**>  All of the examples of the *@when* attribute in the att.datable.w3c class are also valid with respect to this attribute. | | | He likes to be punctual. I said <**q**>  <**time** **when-iso**="12">around noon</**time**> </**q**>, and he showed up at <**time** **when-iso**="12:00:00">12 O'clock</**time**> on the dot.  The second occurence of <time> could have been encoded with the *@when* attribute, as 12:00:00 is a valid time with respect to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition* specification. The first occurence could not. | | | | **notBefore-iso** | specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.iso | | | **notAfter-iso** | specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.iso | | | **from-iso** | indicates the starting point of the period in standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.iso | | | **to-iso** | indicates the ending point of the period in standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.iso | | |
| **Note** | The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by ISO 8601, using the Gregorian calendar.  If both *@when-iso* and *@dur-iso* are specified, the values should be interpreted as indicating a span of time by its starting time (or date) and duration. That is,  <**date** **dur-iso**="P8D" **when-iso**="2007-06-01"/>  indicates the same time period as  <**date** **when-iso**="2007-06-01/P8D"/>  In providing a ‘regularized’ form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading. |

* + 1. att.datable.w3c

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datable.w3c**   provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*. [[3.5.4. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA) [13.3.7. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.datable [affiliation age birth bloc change climate country creation date death district education event faith floruit geogFeat geogName idno langKnowledge langKnown licence location name nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName placeName population precision region relation residence resp settlement sex socecStatus state terrain time title trait] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **when** | supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.w3c | | Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats.  <**p**>  <**date** **when**="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</**date**>  <**date** **when**="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</**date**>  <**time** **when**="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm</**time**>  <**time** **when**="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</**time**>  <**date** **when**="1962-10">October of 1962</**date**>  <**date** **when**="--06-12">June 12th</**date**>  <**date** **when**="---01">the first of the month</**date**>  <**date** **when**="--08">August</**date**>  <**date** **when**="2006">MMVI</**date**>  <**date** **when**="0056">AD 56</**date**>  <**date** **when**="-0056">56 BC</**date**> </**p**> | | | This list begins in  the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after  Pentecost, in that year the <**date** **calendar**="#julian"  **when**="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</**date**>. | | | <**opener**>  <**dateline**>   <**placeName**>Dorchester, Village,</**placeName**>   <**date** **when**="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</**date**>  </**dateline**>  <**salute**>To    Mrs. Cornell,</**salute**> Sunday <**time** **when**="12:00:00">noon.</**time**> </**opener**> | | | |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@when]"> <sch:report role="nonfatal"  test="@notBefore|@notAfter|@from|@to">The @when attribute cannot be used with any other att.datable.w3c attributes.</sch:report> </sch:rule> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@from]"> <sch:report role="nonfatal"  test="@notBefore">The @from and @notBefore attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@to]"> <sch:report role="nonfatal"  test="@notAfter">The @to and @notAfter attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule> |
| **Example** | <**date** **from**="1863-05-28" **to**="1863-06-01">28 May through 1 June 1863</**date**> |
| **Note** | The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*, using the Gregorian calendar.  The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is yyyy-mm-dd, but yyyy, --mm, ---dd, yyyy-mm, or --mm-dd may also be used. For the time part, the form hh:mm:ss is used.  Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used. |

* + 1. att.datcat

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datcat**   provides the *@dcr:datacat* and *@dcr:ValueDatacat* attributes which are used to align XML elements or attributes with the appropriate Data Categories (DCs) defined by the ISO 12620:2009 standard and stored in the Web repository called ISOCat at <http://www.isocat.org/>. [[9.5.2. Lexical View](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DI.html#DIMVLV) [18.3. Other Atomic Feature Values](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FSSY)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.segLike [pc s seg w] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **datcat** | contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the given element with the appropriate Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | | **valueDatcat** | contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the content of the given element or the value of the given attribute with the appropriate simple Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | |
| **Example** | In this example *@dcr:datcat* relates the feature name to the data category "partOfSpeech" and *@dcr:valueDatcat* the feature value to the data category "commonNoun". Both these data categories reside in the ISOcat DCR at [www.isocat.org](http://www.isocat.org), which is the DCR used by ISO TC37 and hosted by its registration authority, the MPI for Psycholinguistics in Nijmegen.  <**fs**    xmlns:dcr="http://www.isocat.org/ns/dcr">  <**f** **dcr:datcat**="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1345"   **dcr:valueDatcat**="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1256" **fVal**="#commonNoun" **name**="POS"/> </**fs**> |
| **Note** | ISO 12620:2009 is a standard describing the data model and procedures for a Data Category Registry (DCR). Data categories are defined as elementary descriptors in a linguistic structure. In the DCR data model each data category gets assigned a unique Peristent IDentifier (PID), i.e., an URI. Linguistic resources or preferably their schemas that make use of data categories from a DCR should refer to them using this PID. For XML-based resources, like TEI documents, ISO 12620:2009 normative Annex A gives a small Data Category Reference XML vocabulary (also available online at <http://www.isocat.org/12620/>), which provides two attributes, *@dcr:datcat* and *@dcr:valueDatcat*. |

* + 1. att.declarable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.declarable**   provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose *@decls* attribute. [[15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | availability bibl editorialDecl langUsage listBibl listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl sourceDesc textClass |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **default** | indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.truthValue | | **Legal values are:** | **true** This element is selected if its parent is selected  **false** This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected. [Default] | | |
| **Note** | The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS). Only one element of a particular type may have a *@default* attribute with a value of true. |

* + 1. att.declaring

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.declaring**   provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element. [[15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | back body div front geo gloss graphic group lg object p ptr ref term text |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **decls** | identifies one or more declarable elements within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | |
| **Note** | The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS). |

* + 1. att.dimensions

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.dimensions**   provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | add age birth date death del floruit gap geogFeat offset population state time trait unclear |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **unit** | names the unit used for the measurement   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Suggested values include:** | **cm** (centimetres)  **mm** (millimetres)  **in** (inches)  **line** lines of text  **char** (characters) characters of text | | | **quantity** | specifies the length in the units specified   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.numeric | | | **extent** | indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.text | | <**gap** **extent**="5 words"/> | | | <**height** **extent**="half the page"/> | | | | **precision** | characterizes the precision of the values specified by the other attributes.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.certainty | | | **scope** | where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **all** measurement applies to all instances.  **most** measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.  **range** measurement applies to only the specified range of instances. | | |

* + 1. att.divLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.divLike**   provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions. [[4. Default Text Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | div lg |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.fragmentable (@part)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **org** | (organization) specifies how the content of the division is organized.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **composite** no claim is made about the sequence in which the immediate contents of this division are to be processed, or their inter-relationships.  **uniform** the immediate contents of this element are regarded as forming a logical unit, to be processed in sequence. [Default] | | | **sample** | indicates whether this division is a sample of the original source and if so, from which part.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **initial** division lacks material present at end in source.  **medial** division lacks material at start and end.  **final** division lacks material at start.  **unknown** position of sampled material within original unknown.  **complete** division is not a sample. [Default] | | |

* + 1. att.docStatus

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.docStatus**   provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | bibl change object revisionDesc |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **status** | describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **approved**  **candidate**  **cleared**  **deprecated**  **draft** [Default]  **embargoed**  **expired**  **frozen**  **galley**  **proposed**  **published**  **recommendation**  **submitted**  **unfinished**  **withdrawn** | | |
| **Example** | <**revisionDesc** **status**="published">  <**change** **status**="published"   **when**="2010-10-21"/>  <**change** **status**="cleared" **when**="2010-10-02"/>  <**change** **status**="embargoed"   **when**="2010-08-02"/>  <**change** **status**="frozen" **when**="2010-05-01"   **who**="#MSM"/>  <**change** **status**="draft" **when**="2010-03-01"   **who**="#LB"/> </**revisionDesc**> |

* + 1. att.editLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.editLike**   provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [[3.4. Simple Editorial Changes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED) [10.3.1. Origination](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/MS.html#msdates) [13.3.2. The Person Element](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSE) [11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHCO)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.transcriptional [add del] affiliation age birth climate corr date death education event expan faith floruit gap geogFeat geogName langKnowledge langKnown location name nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName person persona place placeName population reg relation residence sex socecStatus state terrain time trait unclear |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **evidence** | indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace | | **Suggested values include:** | **internal** there is internal evidence to support the intervention.  **external** there is external evidence to support the intervention.  **conjecture** the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise. | | | **instant** | indicates whether this is an instant revision or not.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.xTruthValue | | **Default** | false | | |
| **Note** | The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.  Each pointer on the *@source* (if present) corresponding to a witness or witness group should reference a bibliographic citation such as a <witness>, <msDesc>, or <bibl> element, or another external bibliographic citation, documenting the source concerned. |

* + 1. att.edition

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.edition**   provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | lb milestone pb |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **ed** | (edition) supplies a sigil or other arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | | **edRef** | (edition reference) provides a pointer to the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | |
| **Example** | <**l**>Of Mans First Disobedience,<**lb** **ed**="1674"/> and<**lb** **ed**="1667"/> the Fruit</**l**> <**l**>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<**lb** **ed**="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</**l**> <**l**>Brought Death into the World,<**lb** **ed**="1667"/> and all<**lb** **ed**="1674"/> our woe,</**l**> |
| **Example** | <**listBibl**>  <**bibl** **xml:id**="stapledon1937">   <**author**>Olaf Stapledon</**author**>,  <**title**>Starmaker</**title**>, <**publisher**>Methuen</**publisher**>, <**date**>1937</**date**>  </**bibl**>  <**bibl** **xml:id**="stapledon1968">   <**author**>Olaf Stapledon</**author**>,  <**title**>Starmaker</**title**>, <**publisher**>Dover</**publisher**>, <**date**>1968</**date**>  </**bibl**> </**listBibl**> <!-- ... --> <**p**>Looking into the future aeons from the supreme moment of  the cosmos, I saw the populations still with all their  strength maintaining the<**pb** **edRef**="#stapledon1968" **n**="411"/>essentials of their ancient culture,  still living their personal lives in zest and endless  novelty of action, … I saw myself still  preserving, though with increasing difficulty, my lucid  con-<**pb** **edRef**="#stapledon1937" **n**="291"/>sciousness;</**p**> |

* + 1. att.fragmentable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.fragmentable**   provides an attribute for representing fragmentation of a structural element, typically as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.divLike [div lg] att.segLike [pc s seg w] l p |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **part** | specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **Y** (yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect  **N** (no) the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness [Default]  **I** (initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element  **M** (medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element  **F** (final) this is the final part of a fragmented element | | **Note** | The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be reconstituted. | | |

* + 1. att.global

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global**   provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [[1.3.1.1. Global Attributes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STGA)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | TEI abbr add addName addrLine address affiliation age anchor argument att author authority availability back bibl biblScope birth bloc body byline catDesc catRef category cell certainty change choice cit classCode classDecl climate closer code corr country creation date dateline death del desc distributor district div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl education eg emph encodingDesc epigraph event expan extent faith figDesc figure fileDesc floruit foreign forename formula front funder gap genName geo geogFeat geogName gi gloss graphic group head hi ident idno imprimatur index interp interpGrp item keywords l label langKnowledge langKnown langUsage language lb lg licence link list listBibl listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location mentioned milestone name nameLink nationality note notesStmt num nym object objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset opener org orgName orig p pb pc persName person personGrp persona place placeName population postscript precision principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q ref refsDecl reg region relatedItem relation residence resp respStmt respons revisionDesc roleName row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt settlement sex sic signed soCalled socecStatus sourceDesc sp speaker sponsor stage state surname table taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term terrain text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer trait unclear val w |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global.rendition (@rend) att.global.linking (@corresp, @sameAs, @next, @prev) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **xml:id** | (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [ID](https://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/#ID) | | **Note** | The *@xml:id* attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section [3.10. Reference Systems](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS). | | | **n** | (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.text | | **Note** | The value of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text. | | | **xml:lang** | (language) indicates the language of the element content using a ‘tag’ generated according to [BCP 47](http://www.rfc-editor.org/rfc/bcp/bcp47.txt).   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.language | | <**p**> … The consequences of  this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last <**foreign** **xml:lang**="rap">ariki</**foreign**> or chief  (Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to  ancestral territorial organization.</**p**> | | | **Note** | The *@xml:lang* value will be inherited from the immediately enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify *@xml:lang* at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a different default may be needed for the <teiHeader> from that needed for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many languages.  The authoritative list of registered language subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see <http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/>, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see <https://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.en.php>.  The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its *@ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF)Internet Engineering Task Force definitions. | | | **xml:space** | signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **default** signals that the application's default white-space processing modes are acceptable  **preserve** indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space | | **Note** | The [XML specification](http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#sec-white-space) provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle xml:space correctly. | | |

* + 1. att.global.analytic

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.analytic**   provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text. [[17.2. Global Attributes for Simple Analyses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AIATTS) [17.3. Spans and Interpretations](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AISP)] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI abbr add addName addrLine address affiliation age anchor argument att author authority availability back bibl biblScope birth bloc body byline catDesc catRef category cell certainty change choice cit classCode classDecl climate closer code corr country creation date dateline death del desc distributor district div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl education eg emph encodingDesc epigraph event expan extent faith figDesc figure fileDesc floruit foreign forename formula front funder gap genName geo geogFeat geogName gi gloss graphic group head hi ident idno imprimatur index interp interpGrp item keywords l label langKnowledge langKnown langUsage language lb lg licence link list listBibl listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location mentioned milestone name nameLink nationality note notesStmt num nym object objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset opener org orgName orig p pb pc persName person personGrp persona place placeName population postscript precision principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q ref refsDecl reg region relatedItem relation residence resp respStmt respons revisionDesc roleName row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt settlement sex sic signed soCalled socecStatus sourceDesc sp speaker sponsor stage state surname table taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term terrain text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer trait unclear val w] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **ana** | (analysis) indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the *@ana* attribute appears.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | **Note** | When multiple values are given, they may reflect either multiple divergent interpretations of an ambiguous text, or multiple mutually consistent interpretations of the same passage in different contexts. | | |

* + 1. att.global.facs

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.facs**   provides an attribute used to express correspondence between an element containing transcribed text and all or part of an image representing that text. [[11.1. Digital Facsimiles](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHFAX)] | |
| **Module** | transcr |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI abbr add addName addrLine address affiliation age anchor argument att author authority availability back bibl biblScope birth bloc body byline catDesc catRef category cell certainty change choice cit classCode classDecl climate closer code corr country creation date dateline death del desc distributor district div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl education eg emph encodingDesc epigraph event expan extent faith figDesc figure fileDesc floruit foreign forename formula front funder gap genName geo geogFeat geogName gi gloss graphic group head hi ident idno imprimatur index interp interpGrp item keywords l label langKnowledge langKnown langUsage language lb lg licence link list listBibl listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location mentioned milestone name nameLink nationality note notesStmt num nym object objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset opener org orgName orig p pb pc persName person personGrp persona place placeName population postscript precision principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q ref refsDecl reg region relatedItem relation residence resp respStmt respons revisionDesc roleName row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt settlement sex sic signed soCalled socecStatus sourceDesc sp speaker sponsor stage state surname table taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term terrain text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer trait unclear val w] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **facs** | (facsimile) points to all or part of an image which corresponds with the content of the element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | |

* + 1. att.global.linking

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.linking**   provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. [[16. Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SA)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI abbr add addName addrLine address affiliation age anchor argument att author authority availability back bibl biblScope birth bloc body byline catDesc catRef category cell certainty change choice cit classCode classDecl climate closer code corr country creation date dateline death del desc distributor district div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl education eg emph encodingDesc epigraph event expan extent faith figDesc figure fileDesc floruit foreign forename formula front funder gap genName geo geogFeat geogName gi gloss graphic group head hi ident idno imprimatur index interp interpGrp item keywords l label langKnowledge langKnown langUsage language lb lg licence link list listBibl listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location mentioned milestone name nameLink nationality note notesStmt num nym object objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset opener org orgName orig p pb pc persName person personGrp persona place placeName population postscript precision principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q ref refsDecl reg region relatedItem relation residence resp respStmt respons revisionDesc roleName row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt settlement sex sic signed soCalled socecStatus sourceDesc sp speaker sponsor stage state surname table taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term terrain text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer trait unclear val w] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **corresp** | (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | <**group**>  <**text** **xml:id**="t1-g1-t1"   **xml:lang**="mi">   <**body** **xml:id**="t1-g1-t1-body1">    <**div** **type**="chapter">     <**head**>He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki, i nga Whenua Maori, 1876.</**head**>     <**p**>…</**p**>    </**div**>   </**body**>  </**text**>  <**text** **xml:id**="t1-g1-t2"   **xml:lang**="en">   <**body** **corresp**="#t1-g1-t1-body1"    **xml:id**="t1-g1-t2-body1">    <**div** **type**="chapter">     <**head**>An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and Disposal of Native Lands, 1876.</**head**>     <**p**>…</**p**>    </**div**>   </**body**>  </**text**> </**group**>  In this example a <group> contains two <text>s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondence is indicated using *@corresp*. The language is indicated using *@xml:lang*, whose value is inherited; both the tag with the *@corresp* and the tag pointed to by the *@corresp* inherit the value from their immediate parent. | | | <!-- In a placeography called "places.xml" --><**place** **corresp**="people.xml#LOND2 people.xml#GENI1"  **xml:id**="LOND1">  <**placeName**>London</**placeName**>  <**desc**>The city of London...</**desc**> </**place**> <!-- In a literary personography called "people.xml" --> <**person** **corresp**="places.xml#LOND1 #GENI1"  **xml:id**="LOND2">  <**persName** **type**="lit">London</**persName**>  <**note**>   <**p**>Allegorical character representing the city of <**placeName** **ref**="places.xml#LOND1">London</**placeName**>.</**p**>  </**note**> </**person**> <**person** **corresp**="places.xml#LOND1 #LOND2"  **xml:id**="GENI1">  <**persName** **type**="lit">London’s Genius</**persName**>  <**note**>   <**p**>Personification of London’s genius. Appears as an      allegorical character in mayoral shows.   </**p**>  </**note**> </**person**>  In this example, a <place> element containing information about the city of London is linked with two <person> elements in a literary personography. This correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in which an allegorical character could be substituted for the physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a correspondence between them. | | | | **sameAs** | points to an element that is the same as the current element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | | **next** | points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | **Note** | It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute. | | | **prev** | (previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | **Note** | It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute. | | |

* + 1. att.global.rendition

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.rendition**   provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [[1.3.1.1.3. Rendition Indicators](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STGAre)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI abbr add addName addrLine address affiliation age anchor argument att author authority availability back bibl biblScope birth bloc body byline catDesc catRef category cell certainty change choice cit classCode classDecl climate closer code corr country creation date dateline death del desc distributor district div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl education eg emph encodingDesc epigraph event expan extent faith figDesc figure fileDesc floruit foreign forename formula front funder gap genName geo geogFeat geogName gi gloss graphic group head hi ident idno imprimatur index interp interpGrp item keywords l label langKnowledge langKnown langUsage language lb lg licence link list listBibl listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location mentioned milestone name nameLink nationality note notesStmt num nym object objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset opener org orgName orig p pb pc persName person personGrp persona place placeName population postscript precision principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q ref refsDecl reg region relatedItem relation residence resp respStmt respons revisionDesc roleName row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt settlement sex sic signed soCalled socecStatus sourceDesc sp speaker sponsor stage state surname table taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term terrain text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer trait unclear val w] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **rend** | (rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | <**head** **rend**="align(center) case(allcaps)">  <**lb**/>To The <**lb**/>Duchesse <**lb**/>of <**lb**/>Newcastle, <**lb**/>On Her <**lb**/>  <**hi** **rend**="case(mixed)">New Blazing-World</**hi**>.  </**head**> | | | **Note** | These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the *@rend* attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines. The values of the *@rend* attribute are a set of sequence-indeterminate individual tokens separated by whitespace. | | |

* + 1. att.global.responsibility

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.responsibility**   provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it. [[1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STGAso) [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED) [11.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and Certainty Attributes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHHR) [17.3. Spans and Interpretations](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AISP) [13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDATTSnr)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI abbr add addName addrLine address affiliation age anchor argument att author authority availability back bibl biblScope birth bloc body byline catDesc catRef category cell certainty change choice cit classCode classDecl climate closer code corr country creation date dateline death del desc distributor district div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl education eg emph encodingDesc epigraph event expan extent faith figDesc figure fileDesc floruit foreign forename formula front funder gap genName geo geogFeat geogName gi gloss graphic group head hi ident idno imprimatur index interp interpGrp item keywords l label langKnowledge langKnown langUsage language lb lg licence link list listBibl listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location mentioned milestone name nameLink nationality note notesStmt num nym object objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset opener org orgName orig p pb pc persName person personGrp persona place placeName population postscript precision principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q ref refsDecl reg region relatedItem relation residence resp respStmt respons revisionDesc roleName row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt settlement sex sic signed soCalled socecStatus sourceDesc sp speaker sponsor stage state surname table taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term terrain text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer trait unclear val w] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **cert** | (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.probCert | | | **resp** | (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | **Note** | To reduce the ambiguity of a *@resp* pointing directly to a person or organization, we recommend that *@resp* be used to point not to an agent (<person> or <org>) but to a <respStmt>, <author>, <editor> or similar element which clarifies the exact role played by the agent. Pointing to multiple <respStmt>s allows the encoder to specify clearly each of the roles played in part of a TEI file (creating, transcribing, encoding, editing, proofing etc.). | | |
| **Example** | Blessed are the <**choice**>  <**sic**>cheesemakers</**sic**>  <**corr** **cert**="high" **resp**="#editor">peacemakers</**corr**> </**choice**>: for they shall be called the children of God. |
| **Example** | <!-- in the <text> ... --><**lg**> <!-- ... -->  <**l**>Punkes, Panders, baſe extortionizing    sla<**choice**>    <**sic**>n</**sic**>    <**corr** **resp**="#JENS1\_transcriber">u</**corr**>   </**choice**>es,</**l**> <!-- ... --> </**lg**> <!-- in the <teiHeader> ... --> <!-- ... --> <**respStmt** **xml:id**="JENS1\_transcriber">  <**resp** **when**="2014">Transcriber</**resp**>  <**name**>Janelle Jenstad</**name**> </**respStmt**> |

* + 1. att.global.source

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.source**   provides an attribute used by elements to point to an external source. [[1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STGAso) [3.3.3. Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ) [8.3.4. Writing](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBAWR)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI abbr add addName addrLine address affiliation age anchor argument att author authority availability back bibl biblScope birth bloc body byline catDesc catRef category cell certainty change choice cit classCode classDecl climate closer code corr country creation date dateline death del desc distributor district div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl education eg emph encodingDesc epigraph event expan extent faith figDesc figure fileDesc floruit foreign forename formula front funder gap genName geo geogFeat geogName gi gloss graphic group head hi ident idno imprimatur index interp interpGrp item keywords l label langKnowledge langKnown langUsage language lb lg licence link list listBibl listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location mentioned milestone name nameLink nationality note notesStmt num nym object objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset opener org orgName orig p pb pc persName person personGrp persona place placeName population postscript precision principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q ref refsDecl reg region relatedItem relation residence resp respStmt respons revisionDesc roleName row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt settlement sex sic signed soCalled socecStatus sourceDesc sp speaker sponsor stage state surname table taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term terrain text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer trait unclear val w] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **source** | specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | **Note** | The *@source* attribute points to an external source. When used on elements describing schema components such as <schemaSpec> or <moduleRef> it identifies the source from which declarations for the components of the object being defined may be obtained.  On other elements it provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.  In either case, the location may be provided using any form of URI, for example an absolute URI, a relative URI, or private scheme URI that is expanded to an absolute URI as documented in a <prefixDef>.  If more than one location is specified, the default assumption is that the required source should be obtained by combining the resources indicated. | | |
| **Example** | <**p**> <!-- ... --> As Willard McCarty (<**bibl** **xml:id**="mcc\_2012">2012, p.2</**bibl**>) tells us, <**quote** **source**="#mcc\_2012">‘Collaboration’ is a problematic and should be a contested    term.</**quote**> <!-- ... --> </**p**> |
| **Example** | <**p**> <!-- ... -->  <**quote** **source**="#chicago\_15\_ed">Grammatical theories are in flux, and the more we learn, the    less we seem to know.</**quote**> <!-- ... --> </**p**> <!-- ... --> <**bibl** **xml:id**="chicago\_15\_ed">  <**title** **level**="m">The Chicago Manual of Style</**title**>, <**edition**>15th edition</**edition**>. <**pubPlace**>Chicago</**pubPlace**>: <**publisher**>University of    Chicago Press</**publisher**> (<**date**>2003</**date**>), <**biblScope** **unit**="page">p.147</**biblScope**>.  </**bibl**> |
| **Example** | <**elementRef** **key**="p" **source**="tei:2.0.1"/>  Include in the schema an element named <p> available from the TEI P5 2.0.1 release. |
| **Example** | <**schemaSpec** **ident**="myODD"  **source**="mycompiledODD.xml"> <!-- further declarations specifying the components required --> </**schemaSpec**>  Create a schema using components taken from the file mycompiledODD.xml. |

* + 1. att.interpLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.interpLike**   provides attributes for elements which represent a formal analysis or interpretation. [[17.2. Global Attributes for Simple Analyses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AIATTS)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | interp interpGrp |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | indicates what kind of phenomenon is being noted in the passage.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **image** identifies an image in the passage.  **character** identifies a character associated with the passage.  **theme** identifies a theme in the passage.  **allusion** identifies an allusion to another text. | | | **inst** | (instances) points to instances of the analysis or interpretation represented by the current element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | **Note** | The current element should be an analytic one. The element pointed at should be a textual one. | | |

* + 1. att.linguistic

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.linguistic**   provides a set of attributes concerning linguistic features of tokens, for usage within token-level elements, specifically <w> and <pc> in the analysis module. [[17.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILALW)] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Members** | pc w |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **lemma** | provides a lemma (base form) for the word, typically uninflected and serving both as an identifier (e.g. in dictionary contexts, as a headword), and as a basis for potential inflections.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.text | | <**w** **lemma**="wife">wives</**w**> | | | <**w** **lemma**="Arznei">Artzeneyen</**w**> | | | | **lemmaRef** | provides a pointer to a definition of the lemma for the word, for example in an online lexicon.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | <**w** **lemma**="hit"  **lemmaRef**="http://www.example.com/lexicon/hitvb.xml"  **type**="verb">hitt<**m** **type**="suffix">ing</**m**> </**w**> | | | | **pos** | (part of speech) indicates the part of speech assigned to a token (i.e. information on whether it is a noun, adjective, or verb), usually according to some official reference vocabulary (e.g. for German: STTS, for English: CLAWS, for Polish: NKJP, etc.).   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.text | | The German sentence ‘Wir fahren in den Urlaub.’ tagged with the Stuttgart-Tuebingen-Tagset (STTS).  <**s**>  <**w** **pos**="PPER">Wir</**w**>  <**w** **pos**="VVFIN">fahren</**w**>  <**w** **pos**="APPR">in</**w**>  <**w** **pos**="ART">den</**w**>  <**w** **pos**="NN">Urlaub</**w**>  <**w** **pos**="$.">.</**w**> </**s**> | | | The English sentence ‘We're going to Brazil.’ tagged with the [CLAWS-5](http://ucrel.lancs.ac.uk/claws5tags.html) tagset, arranged inline (with significant whitespace).  <**p**><**w** **pos**="PNP">We</**w**><**w** **pos**="VBB">'re</**w**> <**w** **pos**="VVG">going</**w**> <**w** **pos**="PRP">to</**w**> <**w** **pos**="NP0">Brazil</**w**><**pc** **pos**="PUN">.</**pc**></**p**> | | | The English sentence ‘We're going on vacation to Brazil for a month!’ tagged with the [CLAWS-7](http://ucrel.lancs.ac.uk/claws7tags.html) tagset and arranged sequentially.  <**p**>  <**w** **pos**="PPIS2">We</**w**>  <**w** **pos**="VBR">'re</**w**>  <**w** **pos**="VVG">going</**w**>  <**w** **pos**="II">on</**w**>  <**w** **pos**="NN1">vacation</**w**>  <**w** **pos**="II">to</**w**>  <**w** **pos**="NP1">Brazil</**w**>  <**w** **pos**="IF">for</**w**>  <**w** **pos**="AT1">a</**w**>  <**w** **pos**="NNT1">month</**w**>  <**pc** **pos**="!">!</**pc**> </**p**> | | | | **msd** | (morphosyntactic description) supplies morphosyntactic information for a token, usually according to some official reference vocabulary (e.g. for German: [STTS-large tagset](http://www.ims.uni-stuttgart.de/forschung/ressourcen/lexika/TagSets/stts-1999.pdf); for a feature description system designed as (pragmatically) universal, see [Universal Features](http://universaldependencies.org/u/feat/index.html)).   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.text | | <**ab**>  <**w** **msd**="1.Pl.\*.Nom"   **pos**="PPER">Wir</**w**>  <**w** **msd**="1.Pl.Pres.Ind"   **pos**="VVFIN">fahren</**w**>  <**w** **msd**="--"   **pos**="APPR">in</**w**>  <**w** **msd**="Def.Masc.Akk.Sg"   **pos**="ART">den</**w**>  <**w** **msd**="Masc.Akk.Sg"   **pos**="NN">Urlaub</**w**>  <**pc** **msd**="--"   **pos**="$.">.</**pc**> </**ab**> | | | | **join** | when present, it provides information on whether the token in question is adjacent to another, and if so, on which side. The definition of this attribute is adapted from ISO MAF (Morpho-syntactic Annotation Framework), ISO 24611:2012.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.text | | **Legal values are:** | **no** (the token is not adjacent to another)  **left** (there is no whitespace on the left side of the token)  **right** (there is no whitespace on the right side of the token)  **both** (there is no whitespace on either side of the token)  **overlap** (the token overlaps with another; other devices (specifying the extent and the area of overlap) are needed to more precisely locate this token in the character stream) | | The example below assumes that the lack of whitespace is marked redundantly, by using the appropriate values of *@join*.  <**s**>  <**pc** **join**="right">"</**pc**>  <**w** **join**="left">Friends</**w**>  <**w**>will</**w**>  <**w**>be</**w**>  <**w** **join**="right">friends</**w**>  <**pc** **join**="both">.</**pc**>  <**pc** **join**="left">"</**pc**> </**s**>  Note that a project may make a decision to only indicate lack of whitespace in one direction, or do that non-redundantly. The existing proposal is the broadest possible, on the assumption that we adopt the "streamable view", where all the information on the current element needs to be represented locally. | | | The English sentence ‘We're going on vacation.’ tagged with the CLAWS-5 tagset, arranged sequentially, tagged on the assumption that only the lack of the preceding whitespace is indicated.  <**p**>  <**w** **pos**="PNP">We</**w**>  <**w** **join**="left"   **pos**="VBB">'re</**w**>  <**w** **pos**="VVG">going</**w**>  <**w** **pos**="PRP">on</**w**>  <**w** **pos**="NN1">vacation</**w**>  <**pc** **join**="left"   **pos**="PUN">.</**pc**> </**p**> | | | |
| **Note** | These attributes make it possible to encode simple language corpora and to add a layer of linguistic information to any tokenized resource. See section [17.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILALW) for discussion. |

* + 1. att.media

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.media**   provides attributes for specifying display and related properties of external media. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | graphic |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **width** | Where the media are displayed, indicates the display width   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.outputMeasurement | | | **height** | Where the media are displayed, indicates the display height   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.outputMeasurement | | | **scale** | Where the media are displayed, indicates a scale factor to be applied when generating the desired display size   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.numeric | | |

* + 1. att.milestoneUnit

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.milestoneUnit**   provides an attribute to indicate the type of section which is changing at a specific milestone. [[3.10.3. Milestone Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5) [2.3.6.3. Milestone Method](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD54M) [2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD54)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Members** | milestone |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **unit** | provides a conventional name for the kind of section changing at this milestone.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Suggested values include:** | **page** physical page breaks (synonymous with the <pb> element).  **column** column breaks.  **line** line breaks (synonymous with the <lb> element).  **book** any units termed book, liber, etc.  **poem** individual poems in a collection.  **canto** cantos or other major sections of a poem.  **speaker** changes of speaker or narrator.  **stanza** stanzas within a poem, book, or canto.  **act** acts within a play.  **scene** scenes within a play or act.  **section** sections of any kind.  **absent** passages not present in the reference edition.  **unnumbered** passages present in the text, but not to be included as part of the reference. | | <**milestone** **ed**="La"  **n**="23"  **unit**="Dreissiger"/>  ... <**milestone** **ed**="AV"  **n**="24"  **unit**="verse"/> ... | | | **Note** | If the milestone marks the beginning of a piece of text not present in the reference edition, the special value absent may be used as the value of *@unit*. The normal interpretation is that the reference edition does not contain the text which follows, until the next <milestone> tag for the edition in question is encountered.  In addition to the values suggested, other terms may be appropriate (e.g. Stephanus for the Stephanus numbers in Plato).  The *@type* attribute may be used to characterize the unit boundary in any respect other than simply identifying the type of unit, for example as word-breaking or not. | | |

* + 1. att.naming

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.naming**   provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [[3.5.1. Referring Strings](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONARS) [13.3.6. Names and Nyms](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDNYM)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.personal [addName forename genName name objectName orgName persName placeName roleName surname] affiliation author birth bloc climate country death district editor education event geogFeat geogName nationality occupation offset population pubPlace region residence rs settlement socecStatus state terrain trait |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.canonical (@key, @ref)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **role** | may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace | | | **nymRef** | (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (nym) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | **Note** | The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names. | | |

* + 1. att.notated

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.notated**   provides an attribute to indicate any specialised notation used for element content. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | formula s seg w |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **notation** | names the notation used for the content of the element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | |

* + 1. att.personal

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.personal**   (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | addName forename genName name objectName orgName persName placeName roleName surname |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **full** | indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **yes** the name component is spelled out in full. [Default]  **abb** (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.  **init** (initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial. | | | **sort** | specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.count | | |

* + 1. att.placement

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.placement**   provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. [[3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDADD) [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHAD)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | add figure head label note stage trailer |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **place** | specifies where this item is placed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace | | **Suggested values include:** | **below** below the line  **bottom** at the foot of the page  **margin** in the margin (left, right, or both)  **top** at the top of the page  **opposite** on the opposite, i.e. facing, page  **overleaf** on the other side of the leaf  **above** above the line  **end** at the end of e.g. chapter or volume.  **inline** within the body of the text.  **inspace** in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe. | | <**add** **place**="margin">[An addition written in the margin]</**add**> <**add** **place**="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the  foot of the current page and also on the facing page]</**add**> | | | <**note** **place**="bottom">Ibid, p.7</**note**> | | | |

* + 1. att.pointing

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.pointing**   provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [[1.3.1.1.2. Language Indicators](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STGAla) [3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COXR)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | catRef gloss licence link note ptr ref term |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **targetLang** | specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by *@target*, using a ‘language tag’ generated according to [BCP 47](http://www.rfc-editor.org/rfc/bcp/bcp47.txt).   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.language | | **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]"> <sch:assert test="@target">@targetLang should only be used on <sch:name/> if @target is specified.</sch:assert> </sch:rule> | | <**linkGrp** **xml:id**="pol-swh\_aln\_2.1-linkGrp">  <**ptr** **target**="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol\_txt\_1-head"   **targetLang**="pl"   **type**="tuv"   **xml:id**="pol-swh\_aln\_2.1.1-ptr"/>  <**ptr** **target**="swh/UDHR/text.xml#swh\_txt\_1-head"   **targetLang**="sw"   **type**="tuv"   **xml:id**="pol-swh\_aln\_2.1.2-ptr"/> </**linkGrp**>  In the example above, the <linkGrp> combines pointers at parallel fragments of the *Universal Declaration of Human Rights*: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili. | | | **Note** | The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its *@ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF)Internet Engineering Task Force definitions. | | | **target** | specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | **Note** | One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. TEI%20Consortium. | | | **evaluate** | specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **all** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.  **one** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.  **none** no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target. | | **Note** | If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers. | | |

* + 1. att.ranging

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.ranging**   provides attributes for describing numerical ranges. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.dimensions [add age birth date death del floruit gap geogFeat offset population state time trait unclear] num precision |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **atLeast** | gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.numeric | | | **atMost** | gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.numeric | | | **min** | where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.numeric | | | **max** | where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.numeric | | | **confidence** | specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by *@min* and *@max*, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.probability | | |
| **Example** | The MS. was lost in transmission by mail from <**del** **rend**="overstrike">  <**gap** **atLeast**="1" **atMost**="2"   **extent**="one or two letters" **reason**="illegible" **unit**="chars"/> </**del**> Philadelphia to the Graphic office, New York. |

* + 1. att.resourced

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.resourced**   provides attributes by which a resource (such as an externally held media file) may be located. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | graphic |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **url** | (uniform resource locator) specifies the URL from which the media concerned may be obtained.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | |

* + 1. att.scoping

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.scoping**   provides attributes for selecting particular elements within a document. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | certainty precision respons |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **target** | points at one or several elements or sets of elements by means of one or more data pointers, using the URI syntax.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | Elizabeth went to <**persName** **xml:id**="ESSEX">Essex</**persName**> <**certainty** **degree**="0.6"  **locus**="name"  **target**="#ESSEX"/> | | | | **match** | supplies an arbitrary XPath expression using the syntax defined in <#XSLT2> which identifies a set of nodes, selected within the context identified by the *@target* attribute if this is supplied, or within the context of the parent element if it is not.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.xpath | | <**gap** **reason**="cancelled">  <**certainty** **cert**="low"   **locus**="value"   **match**="@reason"/> </**gap**> | | | **Note** | The expression of certainty applies to the nodeset identified by the value of the *@target* attribute, possibly modified additionally by the value of the *@match* attribute. If more than one identifier is given, the implication is that all elements (or nodesets) are intended. The *@match* attribute may also be used as a means of identifying groups of elements.  If *@target* and *@match* are present, *@target* selects an element and the XPath expression in *@match* is evaluated in the context of that element. If neither attribute is present, the expression applies to its parent element. If only *@target* is given, the expression refers to the selected element or nodeset. If only *@match* is given, the XPath expression is evaluated in the context of the parent element of the bearing element.  Note that the value of the *@target* attribute may include an XPointer expression including an XPath expression (see [16.2.4. TEI XPointer Schemes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SATS)). | | |

* + 1. att.segLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.segLike**   provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [[16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASE) [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | pc s seg w |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat) att.fragmentable (@part)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **function** | characterizes the function of the segment.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Note** | Attribute values will often vary depending on the type of element to which they are attached. For example, a <cl>, may take values such as coordinate, subject, adverbial etc. For a <phr>, such values as subject, predicate etc. may be more appropriate. Such constraints will typically be implemented by a project-defined customization. | | |

* + 1. att.sortable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.sortable**   provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [[9.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DI.html#DIBO)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | bibl event idno item list listBibl listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation nym object org person personGrp persona place relation term |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **sortKey** | supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.word | | David's other principal backer, Josiah  ha-Kohen <**index** **indexName**="NAMES">  <**term** **sortKey**="Azarya\_Josiah\_Kohen">Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</**term**> </**index**> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was David's own first  cousin. | | | **Note** | The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent  Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for 4-H will often appear alphabetized under ‘fourh’, and McCoy may be alphabetized under ‘maccoy’, while A1, A4, and A5 may all appear in numeric order ‘alphabetized’ between ‘a-’ and ‘AA’. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location. | | |

* + 1. att.spanning

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.spanning**   provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it. [[11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHAD) [1.3.1. Attribute Classes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECAT)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | index lb milestone pb |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **spanTo** | indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | **Schematron** | The @spanTo attribute must point to an element following the current element  <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@spanTo]"> <sch:assert test="id(substring(@spanTo,2)) and following::\*[@xml:id=substring(current()/@spanTo,2)]">The element indicated by @spanTo (<sch:value-of select="@spanTo"/>) must follow the current element <sch:name/> </sch:assert> </sch:rule> | | |
| **Note** | The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the *@spanTo* attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element. If no content is present, the assumption is that the starting point of the span is immediately following the element itself. |

* + 1. att.tableDecoration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.tableDecoration**   provides attributes used to decorate rows or cells of a table. [[14. Tables, Formulæ, Graphics and Notated Music](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FT.html#FT)] | |
| **Module** | figures |
| **Members** | cell row |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **role** | indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Suggested values include:** | **label** labelling or descriptive information only.  **data** data values. [Default] | | **Note** | When this attribute is specified on a row, its value is the default for all cells in this row. When specified on a cell, its value overrides any default specified by the *@role* attribute of the parent <row> element. | | | **rows** | indicates the number of rows occupied by this cell or row.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.count | | **Default** | 1 | | **Note** | A value greater than one indicates that this cell spans several rows. Where several cells span multiple rows, it may be more convenient to use nested tables. | | | **cols** | (columns) indicates the number of columns occupied by this cell or row.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.count | | **Default** | 1 | | **Note** | A value greater than one indicates that this cell or row spans several columns. Where an initial cell spans an entire row, it may be better treated as a heading. | | |

* + 1. att.timed

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.timed**   provides attributes common to those elements which have a duration in time, expressed either absolutely or by reference to an alignment map. [[8.3.5. Temporal Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBATI)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | gap |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **start** | indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element begins.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | **Note** | If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to follow the immediately preceding element at the same hierarchic level. | | | **end** | indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element ends.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | **Note** | If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to precede the immediately following element at the same hierarchic level. | | |

* + 1. att.transcriptional

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.transcriptional**   provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources. [[11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHAD)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | add del |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.written (@hand)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **status** | indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **duplicate** all of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact.  **duplicate-partial** part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original  **excessStart** some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.  **excessEnd** some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.  **shortStart** some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.  **shortEnd** some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.  **partial** some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.  **unremarkable** the deletion is not faulty. [Default] | | **Note** | Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common.  Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question. | | | **cause** | documents the presumed cause for the intervention.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | | **seq** | (sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.count | | |

* + 1. att.translatable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.translatable**   provides attributes used to indicate the status of a translatable portion of an ODD document. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | desc gloss |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **versionDate** | specifies the date on which the source text was extracted and sent to the translator   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.w3c | | **Note** | The *@versionDate* attribute can be used to determine whether a translation might need to be revisited, by comparing the modification date on the containing file with the *@versionDate* value on the translation. If the file has changed, changelogs can be checked to see whether the source text has been modified since the translation was made. | | |

* + 1. att.typed

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.typed**   provides attributes which can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. [[1.3.1. Attribute Classes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECAT) [17.1.1. Words and Above](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILCW) [3.5.1. Referring Strings](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONARS) [3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COXR) [3.5.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAB) [3.12.1. Core Tags for Verse](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COVE) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL) [4.1.1. Un-numbered Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDIV1) [4.1.2. Numbered Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDIV2) [4.2.1. Headings and Trailers](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSHD) [4.4. Virtual Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSVIRT) [13.3.2.3. Personal Relationships](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSREL) [11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHCO) [16.1.1. Pointers and Links](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAPTL) [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASE) [12.2. Linking the Apparatus to the Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TC.html#TCAPLK) [22.5.1.2. Defining Content Models: RELAX NG](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TDTAGCONT) [8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBA) [23.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/USE.html#MDMDAL)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | TEI abbr add addName affiliation age anchor bibl birth bloc change cit climate corr country date death del desc district div divGen education event faith figure forename genName geogFeat geogName gloss group head ident idno label langKnowledge lb lg link list listBibl listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location milestone name nameLink nationality note num nym object objectName occupation offset org orgName pb pc persName place placeName population ptr ref reg region relatedItem relation residence roleName rs s seg settlement sex socecStatus state surname table teiCorpus term terrain text time title titlePage titlePart trailer trait w |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | <**div** **type**="verse">  <**head**>Night in Tarras</**head**>  <**lg** **type**="stanza">   <**l**>At evening tramping on the hot white road</**l**>   <**l**>…</**l**>  </**lg**>  <**lg** **type**="stanza">   <**l**>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</**l**>   <**l**>…</**l**>  </**lg**> </**div**> | | | **Note** | The *@type* attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of att.typed, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way. | | | **subtype** | provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Note** | The *@subtype* attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its *@type* attribute. | | |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@subtype]"> <sch:assert test="@type">The <sch:name/> element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type</sch:assert> </sch:rule> |
| **Note** | When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used. Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the <valList> element in the project-specific schema description, as described in [23.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/USE.html#MDMDAL) . |

* + 1. att.written

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.written**   provides an attribute to indicate the hand in which the content of an element was written in the source being transcribed. [[1.3.1. Attribute Classes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECAT)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.transcriptional [add del] closer div figure head hi label note opener p postscript salute seg signed text trailer |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **hand** | points to a <handNote> element describing the hand considered responsible for the content of the element concerned.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | |

* 1. Macros
     1. macro.limitedContent

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.limitedContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | desc figDesc |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>   <classRef key="model.inter"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | macro.limitedContent = ( text | [model.limitedPhrase](#TEI.model.limitedPhrase) | [model.inter](#TEI.model.inter) )\* |

* + 1. macro.paraContent

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.paraContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | add corr del docEdition emph hi imprimatur orig p ref reg salute seg sic signed title titlePart unclear |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.inter"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>   <elementRef key="lg"/>   <classRef key="model.lLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | macro.paraContent =  (  text  | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.inter](#TEI.model.inter) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [lg](#TEI.lg) | [model.lLike](#TEI.model.lLike) )\* |

* + 1. macro.phraseSeq

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.phraseSeq** (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [[1.4.1. Standard Content Models](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECST)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | abbr addName addrLine affiliation author biblScope birth bloc country death distributor district docAuthor docDate edition editor education eg expan extent faith floruit foreign forename genName geogFeat geogName gloss label mentioned name nameLink nationality num objectName offset orgName persName placeName pubPlace publisher region residence roleName rs s settlement sex soCalled socecStatus speaker surname term |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.qLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | macro.phraseSeq =  ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.qLike](#TEI.model.qLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* |

* + 1. macro.phraseSeq.limited

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.phraseSeq.limited** (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [[1.4.1. Standard Content Models](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECST)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | age authority classCode funder langKnown language principal resp sponsor |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | macro.phraseSeq.limited = ( text | [model.limitedPhrase](#TEI.model.limitedPhrase) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* |

* + 1. macro.specialPara

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.specialPara** ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | cell change item licence note occupation q stage |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.inter"/>   <classRef key="model.divPart"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | macro.specialPara =  (  text  | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.inter](#TEI.model.inter) | [model.divPart](#TEI.model.divPart) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* |

* 1. Datatypes
     1. teidata.certainty

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.certainty** defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teidata.probCertElement:   * certainty/@cert * precision/@precision |
| **Content model** | <content>  <valList type="closed">   <valItem ident="high"/>   <valItem ident="medium"/>   <valItem ident="low"/>   <valItem ident="unknown"/>  </valList> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.certainty = "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown" |
| **Note** | Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter. |

* + 1. teidata.count

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.count** defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * age/@value * table/@rows * table/@cols |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger |
| **Note** | Any positive integer value or zero is permitted |

* + 1. teidata.duration.iso

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.duration.iso** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" } |
| **Example** | <**time** **dur-iso**="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</**time**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **dur-iso**="P1,5D">a day and a half</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **dur-iso**="P14D">a fortnight</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**time** **dur-iso**="PT0.02S">20 ms</**time**> |
| **Note** | A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either . or , as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first ‘time’ number-letter pair.  For complete details, see ISO 8601 *Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times*. |

* + 1. teidata.duration.w3c

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.duration.w3c** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="duration"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.duration.w3c = xsd:duration |
| **Example** | <**time** **dur**="PT45M">forty-five minutes</**time**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **dur**="P1DT12H">a day and a half</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **dur**="P7D">a week</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**time** **dur**="PT0.02S">20 ms</**time**> |
| **Note** | A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the S number, which may have a decimal component (using . as the decimal point). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first ‘time’ number-letter pair.  For complete details, see the [W3C specification](http://www.w3.org/TR/2004/REC-xmlschema-2-20041028/#duration). |

* + 1. teidata.enumerated

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.enumerated** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * abbr/@type * affiliation/@type * age/@type * att/@scheme * availability/@status * birth/@type * certainty/@locus * death/@type * desc/@type * divGen/@type * education/@type * faith/@type * gap/@reason * gap/@agent * gi/@scheme * idno/@type * langKnowledge/@type * list/@type * nationality/@type * num/@type * occupation/@type * pc/@force * pc/@unit * person/@role * person/@age * personGrp/@role * personGrp/@age * persona/@role * persona/@age * q/@type * relation/@name * residence/@type * respons/@locus * sex/@type * socecStatus/@type * stage/@type * title/@type * title/@level * titlePage/@type * titlePart/@type * unclear/@reason * unclear/@agent |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef key="teidata.word"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.enumerated = [teidata.word](#TEI.teidata.word) |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘word’ which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.  Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a <valList> element. |

* + 1. teidata.language

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.language** defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [[6.1. Language Identification](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CH.html#CHSH)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * langKnowledge/@tags * langKnown/@tag * language/@ident |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="language"/>   <valList>    <valItem ident=""/>   </valList>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.language = xsd:language | ( "" ) |
| **Note** | The values for this attribute are language ‘tags’ as defined in [BCP 47](https://tools.ietf.org/html/bcp47). Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 5646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.  A ‘language tag’, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or subtags separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.  **language** The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.  **script** The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at <http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html>. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.  **region** Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case; the list of codes can be searched or browsed at <https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/>. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm>.  **variant** An IANA-registered variation. These codes ‘are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags’.  **extension** An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. These exist to allow for future extension to BCP 47, but as of this writing no such extensions are in use.  **private use** An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter x (i.e., starts with x-) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding <language> element must be present in the TEI header.  There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the [IANA registry](http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry) that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been ‘grandfathered’ from previous specifications.  Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with x-, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding <language> element in the TEI header.  Examples include  sn Shona  zh-TW Taiwanese  zh-Hant-HK Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong  en-SL English as spoken in Sierra Leone  pl Polish  es-MX Spanish as spoken in Mexico  es-419 Spanish as spoken in Latin America  The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, [Language tags in HTML and XML](http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/Overview.en.php). |

* + 1. teidata.name

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.name** defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | att giElement:   * index/@indexName |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="Name"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.name = xsd:Name |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits. |

* + 1. teidata.namespace

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.namespace** defines the range of attribute values used to indicate XML namespaces as defined by the W3C [Namespaces in XML](http://www.w3.org/TR/1999/REC-xml-names-19990114/) Technical Recommendation. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="anyURI"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.namespace = xsd:anyURI |
| **Note** | The range of syntactically valid values is defined by [RFC 3986 Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3986.txt) |

* + 1. teidata.numeric

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.numeric** defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * num/@value * precision/@stdDeviation |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="double"/>   <dataRef name="token"    restriction="(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)"/>   <dataRef name="decimal"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.numeric =  xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal |
| **Note** | Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio.  To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, ‘E notation’, a variant of ‘exponential notation’, may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3.  A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2. |

* + 1. teidata.outputMeasurement

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.outputMeasurement** defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.outputMeasurement =  token  {  pattern = "[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"  } |
| **Example** | <**figure**>  <**head**>The TEI Logo</**head**>  <**figDesc**>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters <**mentioned**>TEI</**mentioned**> in    between and <**mentioned**>text encoding initiative</**mentioned**> underneath, all on a white    background.</**figDesc**>  <**graphic** **height**="600px"   **url**="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg" **width**="600px"/> </**figure**> |
| **Note** | These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the [CSS3 working draft](http://www.w3.org/TR/2005/WD-css3-values-20050726/#numbers0). |

* + 1. teidata.pattern

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.pattern** defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.pattern = token |
| **Note** | A regular expression, often called a pattern, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings Handel, Händel, and Haendel can be described by the pattern H(ä|ae?)ndel (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern H(ä|ae?)ndel matches each of the three strings)  [Wikipedia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Regular_expression#Basic_concepts)  This TEI datatype is mapped to the XSD token datatype, and may therefore contain any string of characters. However, it is recommended that the value used conform to the particular flavour of regular expression syntax supported by XSD Schema. |

* + 1. teidata.pointer

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.pointer** defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * catRef/@scheme * certainty/@given * change/@target * classCode/@scheme * event/@where * keywords/@scheme * note/@targetEnd * nym/@parts * occupation/@scheme * occupation/@code * relatedItem/@target * relation/@active * relation/@mutual * relation/@passive * socecStatus/@scheme * socecStatus/@code |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="anyURI"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.pointer = xsd:anyURI |
| **Note** | The range of syntactically valid values is defined by  [RFC 3986](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3986.txt)*Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*. Note that the values themselves are encoded using [RFC 3987](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3987.txt)*Internationalized Resource Identifiers* (IRIs) mapping to URIs. For example, https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/% is encoded as https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25 while http://موقع.وزارة-الاتصالات.مصر/ is encoded as http://xn--4gbrim.xn----rmckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/ |

* + 1. teidata.probCert

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.probCert** defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef key="teidata.probability"/>   <dataRef key="teidata.certainty"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.probCert = [teidata.probability](#TEI.teidata.probability) | [teidata.certainty](#TEI.teidata.certainty) |

* + 1. teidata.probability

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.probability** defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teidata.probCertElement:   * certainty/@degree |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="double"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.probability = xsd:double |
| **Note** | Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing certainly false and 1 representing certainly true. |

* + 1. teidata.replacement

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.replacement** defines attribute values which contain a replacement template. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.replacement = text |

* + 1. teidata.sex

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.sex** defines the range of attribute values used to identify human or animal sex. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * person/@sex * personGrp/@sex * persona/@sex * sex/@value |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef key="teidata.word"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.sex = [teidata.word](#TEI.teidata.word) |
| **Note** | Values for attributes using this datatype may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property <http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats> (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 *Representation of Human Sexes*<http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip> (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People*<http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection>. |

* + 1. teidata.temporal.iso

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.temporal.iso** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the international standard *Data elements and interchange formats – Information interchange – Representation of dates and times*. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="date"/>   <dataRef name="gYear"/>   <dataRef name="gMonth"/>   <dataRef name="gDay"/>   <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/>   <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/>   <dataRef name="time"/>   <dataRef name="dateTime"/>   <dataRef name="token"    restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.temporal.iso =  xsd:date  | xsd:gYear  | xsd:gMonth  | xsd:gDay  | xsd:gYearMonth  | xsd:gMonthDay  | xsd:time  | xsd:dateTime  | token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" } |
| **Note** | If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used.  For all representations for which ISO 8601 describes both a basic and an extended format, these Guidelines recommend use of the extended format.  While ISO 8601 permits the use of both 00:00 and 24:00 to represent midnight, these Guidelines strongly recommend against the use of 24:00. |

* + 1. teidata.temporal.w3c

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.temporal.w3c** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition* specification. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * docDate/@when |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="date"/>   <dataRef name="gYear"/>   <dataRef name="gMonth"/>   <dataRef name="gDay"/>   <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/>   <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/>   <dataRef name="time"/>   <dataRef name="dateTime"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.temporal.w3c =  xsd:date  | xsd:gYear  | xsd:gMonth  | xsd:gDay  | xsd:gYearMonth  | xsd:gMonthDay  | xsd:time  | xsd:dateTime |
| **Note** | If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used. |

* + 1. teidata.text

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.text** defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of Unicode characters possibly including whitespace. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="string"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.text = string |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘token’ in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted. |

* + 1. teidata.truthValue

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.truthValue** defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * note/@anchored * pc/@pre |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="boolean"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.truthValue = xsd:boolean |
| **Note** | The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false.  This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: data.xTruthValue. |

* + 1. teidata.unboundedInt

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.unboundedInt** defines an attribute value which can be either any non-negative integer or the string "unbounded". | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content> <alternate>   <dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/>   <valList type="closed">    <valItem ident="unbounded"/>   </valList>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.unboundedInt = xsd:nonNegativeInteger | ( "unbounded" ) |

* + 1. teidata.version

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.version** defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * teiCorpus/@version |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.version = token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" } |
| **Note** | The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (<http://unicode.org/versions/>). A version number contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied. |

* + 1. teidata.versionNumber

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.versionNumber** defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="[\d]+[a-z]\*[\d]\*(\.[\d]+[a-z]\*[\d]\*){0,3}"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.versionNumber =  token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]\*[\d]\*(\.[\d]+[a-z]\*[\d]\*){0,3}" } |

* + 1. teidata.word

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.word** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teidata.enumerated teidata.sexElement:   * certainty/@assertedValue * code/@lang * langKnown/@level * org/@role * personGrp/@size |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.word = token { pattern = "[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+" } |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘word’ which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace. |

* + 1. teidata.xTruthValue

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.xTruthValue** (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="boolean"/>   <valList>    <valItem ident="unknown"/>    <valItem ident="inapplicable"/>   </valList>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean | ( "unknown" | "inapplicable" ) |
| **Note** | In cases where where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype data.TruthValue. |

* + 1. teidata.xmlName

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.xmlName** defines attribute values which contain an XML name. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="NCName"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.xmlName = xsd:NCName |
| **Note** | The rules defining an XML name form a part of the XML Specification. |

* + 1. teidata.xpath

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.xpath** defines attribute values which contain an XPath expression. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.xpath = text |
| **Note** | Any XPath expression using the syntax defined in <#XSLT2>.  When writing programs that evaluate XPath expressions, programmers should be mindful of the possibility of malicious code injection attacks. For further information about XPath injection attacks, see the [article at OWASP](https://www.owasp.org/index.php/XPATH_Injection). |

1. A namespace is an XML concept. Its function is to identify the vocabulary from which a group of element names are drawn, using a standard identifier resembling a web address. The namespace for all TEI elements is http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0 [↑](#footnote-ref-2)
2. The relevant standard is *Best Current Practice 47* (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/bcp47>). The authoritative list of registered subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. For a general overview of the construction of language tags, see <http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/>, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see <http://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags>. [↑](#footnote-ref-3)
3. The full TEI provides a range of elements for encoding metadata about manuscript production and description, which are not however included in TEI Lite [↑](#footnote-ref-4)
4. The analysis is taken, with permission, from Willard McCarty and Burton Wright, *An Analytical Onomasticon to the Metamorphoses of Ovid* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, forthcoming). Some simplifications have been undertaken. [↑](#footnote-ref-5)